Trademark Information

Polycom®, the Polycom “Triangles” logo, and the names and marks associated with Polycom’s products are trademarks and/or service marks of Polycom, Inc., and are registered and/or common-law marks in the United States and various other countries.

All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

Java

Java is a registered trademark of Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Patent Information

The accompanying product is protected by one or more U.S. and foreign patents and/or pending patent applications held by Polycom, Inc.

End User License Agreement

Use of this software constitutes acceptance of the terms and conditions of the Polycom DMA 7000 system end-user license agreement (EULA).

The EULA is included in the release notes document for your version, which is available on the Polycom Support page for the Polycom DMA 7000 system.

© 2011 Polycom, Inc. All rights reserved.

Polycom, Inc.
4750 Willow Road
Pleasanton, CA 94588-2708
USA

No part of this document may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, for any purpose, without the express written permission of Polycom, Inc. Under the law, reproducing includes translating into another language or format.

As between the parties, Polycom, Inc., retains title to and ownership of all proprietary rights with respect to the software contained within its products. The software is protected by United States copyright laws and international treaty provision. Therefore, you must treat the software like any other copyrighted material (e.g., a book or sound recording).

Every effort has been made to ensure that the information in this manual is accurate. Polycom, Inc., is not responsible for printing or clerical errors. Information in this document is subject to change without notice.
Contents

1 Polycom® DMA™ 7000 System Overview .................. 1
   Introduction to the Polycom DMA System .............. 1
   Polycom Solution Support ............................ 3
   Working in the Polycom DMA System .................. 3
   Third-Party Software ................................. 6
   Open Source Software ................................. 6

2 Polycom® DMA™ System Initial Configuration Summary . . 11
   Add Required DNS Records for the Polycom DMA System .... 12
   License the Polycom DMA System .................... 12
   Configure Signaling ................................ 13
   Set Up Security .................................... 13
   Set Up MCUs ....................................... 14
   Connect to an Enterprise Directory ................... 15
   Set Up Conference Templates .......................... 16
   Test the System ..................................... 16

3 System Security ........................................... 19
   Management and Security Overview ..................... 19
   How Certificates Work ................................ 19
   Forms of Certificates Accepted by the Polycom DMA System 20
   How Certificates Are Used by the Polycom DMA System ..... 21
   Frequently Asked Questions ........................... 21
   Certificate Management ............................... 22
   Certificate Information Dialog Box .................... 24
   Certificate Signing Request Dialog Box ................ 24
   Add Certificates Dialog Box ........................... 25
   Certificate Details Dialog Box ......................... 25
   Certificate Procedures ................................ 26
   Install a Certificate Authority’s Certificate .......... 27
   Create a Certificate Signing Request in the DMA System 28
Install a Certificate in the DMA System ........................................... 29
Remove a Certificate from the DMA System ................................. 31
Security Configuration ................................................................. 32
Session Configuration ................................................................... 36
Local Password Requirements ....................................................... 37
Local Account Configuration ......................................................... 39
Login Banner .................................................................................. 40

4 System Configuration ................................................................. 41
Network ......................................................................................... 41
Routing Configuration Dialog Box ................................................... 44
System Time ..................................................................................... 45
License ............................................................................................. 46
Signaling Configuration ................................................................. 47
Logging Configuration .................................................................... 49
History Record Retention ............................................................... 50
CMA Integration ............................................................................. 51
Join CMA Dialog Box ..................................................................... 52
System Configuration Procedures .................................................... 53
  Add Licenses ................................................................................... 53
  Configure Signaling ....................................................................... 55
  Configure Logging .......................................................................... 56
  Configure History Record Retention ............................................. 57
  Join or Leave a Polycom CMA System ........................................ 57

5 Device Management ................................................................. 59
MCUs ............................................................................................... 59
  Add MCU Dialog Box ................................................................... 62
  Edit MCU Dialog Box ................................................................... 63
  MCU Procedures ............................................................................ 64
MCU Pools ....................................................................................... 67
  Add MCU Pool Dialog Box .............................................................. 68
  Edit MCU Pool Dialog Box .............................................................. 68
  MCU Pool Procedures .................................................................... 69
MCU Pool Orders ............................................................................. 70
  Add MCU Pool Order Dialog Box .................................................. 71
  Edit MCU Pool Order Dialog Box .................................................. 72
  MCU Pool Order Procedures ........................................................ 73
6 User Experience ........................................ 75
  Conference Templates ......................................... 75
  Two Types of Templates .................................... 75
  Template Priority ........................................... 77
  About Conference IVR Services ............................ 78
  About Cascading ............................................. 78
  Conference Templates List .................................. 80
  Add Conference Template Dialog Box ...................... 80
  Edit Conference Template Dialog Box ..................... 90
  Select Layout Dialog Box .................................. 98
  Conference Templates Procedures ......................... 98
User Experience Settings ................................... 100
Calendaring Service ......................................... 101
Shared Number Dialing ...................................... 104
  Add Virtual Entry Queue Dialog Box ..................... 106
  Add Direct Dial Virtual Entry Queue Dialog Box ........ 107
  Edit Virtual Entry Queue Dialog Box ..................... 107
  Edit Direct Dial Virtual Entry Queue Dialog Box ....... 108

7 Enterprise Directory Integration ......................... 109
  Enterprise Directory ......................................... 109
  Enterprise Directory Integration Procedure .............. 114
  Understanding Base DN ..................................... 117
  Adding Passcodes for Enterprise Users .................. 119
  About the System’s Directory Queries ..................... 121

8 Site Topology Configuration ............................. 127
  About Site Topology ......................................... 127
  Sites ......................................................... 128
    Site Information Dialog Box .............................. 129
    Add Site Dialog Box ...................................... 130
    Edit Site Dialog Box ...................................... 130
    Add Subnet Dialog Box .................................. 131
    Edit Subnet Dialog Box .................................. 132
  Site Links .................................................. 133
    Add Site Link Dialog Box ................................. 133
    Edit Site Link Dialog Box ................................. 134
  Site-to-Site Exclusions .................................... 135
    Add Site-to-Site Exclusion Wizard ....................... 135
# Network Clouds

- Add MPLS Cloud Dialog Box · 137
- Edit MPLS Cloud Dialog Box · 137
- Site Topology Configuration Procedures · 138

## Users and Groups · 141

- User Roles Overview · 142
- Adding Users Overview · 143
- Users · 144
  - Add User Dialog Box · 145
  - Edit User Dialog Box · 147
  - Conference Rooms Dialog Box · 149
  - Add Conference Room Dialog Box · 150
  - Edit Conference Room Dialog Box · 151
- Users Procedures · 152
- Conference Rooms Procedures · 154
- Groups · 156
  - Import Enterprise Groups Dialog Box · 157
  - Edit Group Dialog Box · 158
- Enterprise Groups Procedures · 159

## System Operations · 161

- Management and Maintenance Overview · 161
- Administrator Responsibilities · 162
- Administrative Best Practices · 162
- Auditor Responsibilities · 163
- Auditor Best Practices · 163
- Recommended Regular Maintenance · 163
- Dashboard · 166
- Sessions · 170
- Change Password Dialog Box · 171
- Tools · 172
- System Log Files · 174
  - System Logs Procedures · 175
- Backing Up and Restoring · 176
  - Backup and Restore Procedures · 177
- Upgrading the Software · 181
  - Upgrade Procedures · 182
- Adding a Second Server · 184
- Expanding an Unpatched System · 185
Expanding a Patched System .................................................. 186
Replacing a Failed Server ................................................. 187
Shutting Down and Restarting ........................................... 188

11 System Reports .............................................................. 189

Call History Report .......................................................... 189
Export History ................................................................. 190
Call Events ...................................................................... 190
Property Changes ............................................................. 191
Conference History Report ............................................... 191
Export History ................................................................. 192
Associated Calls ............................................................... 192
Conference Events ............................................................ 193
Property Changes ............................................................. 193
Export CDR Data ............................................................... 194
Enterprise Directory Integration Report .............................. 196
Orphaned Groups and Users Report .................................... 199
Conference Room Errors Report ........................................ 200
Export Conference Room Errors Report .............................. 202
Enterprise Passcode Errors Report ..................................... 203
Export Enterprise Passcode Errors Report ......................... 204

Index .............................................................................. 207
This chapter provides an overview of the Polycom® Distributed Media Application™ (DMA™) 7000 system. It includes these topics:

- Introduction to the Polycom DMA System
- Polycom Solution Support
- Working in the Polycom DMA System
- Third-Party Software

### Introduction to the Polycom DMA System

The Polycom DMA system is a highly reliable and scalable video collaboration infrastructure solution based on the Polycom® Proxias™ application server. It can be deployed in two configurations.

The Polycom DMA system uses advanced routing policies to distribute voice and video calls among multiple media servers (Multipoint Control Units, or MCUs), creating a single resource pool. The system acts much like a virtual MCU, greatly simplifying video conferencing resource management and improving efficiency.

The Polycom DMA system integrates with your enterprise directory, automating the task of provisioning users for video conferencing. Combined with its advanced resource management, this makes reservationless video conferencing on a large scale feasible and efficient, reducing or eliminating the need for conference scheduling.

The Polycom DMA system’s ability to handle multiple MCUs as a single resource pool makes it highly scalable. To expand the system, you can add MCUs on the fly without impacting end users and without requiring re-provisioning.
Two-server Configuration

The two-server configuration of the Polycom DMA system is designed to have no single point of failure within the system that could cause the service to become unavailable.

In the event of a single server (node) failure, two things happen:

• All current calls that are being routed through the failed node are terminated. These users simply need to redial the same number. The gatekeeper automatically routes them to the remaining Polycom DMA system server and they’re placed back into conference.

• If the failed server is the active web host for the system management interface, the active user interface sessions end, the web host address automatically migrates to the remaining server, and it becomes the active web host. Administrative users can then log back into the system at the same URL. The system can always be administered via the same address, regardless of which server is the web host.

The Polycom DMA system continually monitors the used and available resources on each MCU. If an MCU fails, loses its connection to the system, or is taken out of service, the Polycom DMA system adjusts its internal resource counts. The consequences for existing calls and conferences depend on whether they’re H.323 or SIP:

• H.323 calls and conferences on the failed MCU are terminated. But as in a server failure, callers can dial back into the system using the exact same number that they used for their initial dial-in. The Polycom DMA system then relocates their new conference to the best available MCU (provided that there is still sufficient MCU capacity remaining in the system).

• SIP calls on the failed MCU are automatically moved to another MCU or MCUs (if available), up to the capacity available.

The internal databases within each Polycom DMA system server are fully replicated to the other node in the cluster. If a catastrophic failure of one of the database engines occurs, the system automatically switches itself over to use the database on the other server.

Single-server Configuration

The Polycom DMA system is also available in a single-server configuration. This configuration offers all the advantages of the Polycom DMA system except the redundancy and fault tolerance at a lower price. It can be upgraded to a two-server configuration at any time.

This manual generally assumes a redundant two-server cluster. Where there are significant differences between the two configurations, those are spelled out.
Polycom Solution Support

Polycom Implementation and Maintenance services provide support for Polycom solution components only. Additional services for supported third-party Unified Communications (UC) environments integrated with Polycom solutions are available from Polycom Global Services and its certified Partners. These additional services will help customers successfully design, deploy, optimize, and manage Polycom visual communications within their UC environments.

Professional Services for Microsoft Integration is mandatory for Polycom Conferencing for Microsoft Outlook and Microsoft Office Communications Server integrations. For additional information, please see http://www.polycom.com/services/professional_services/index.html or contact your local Polycom representative.

Working in the Polycom DMA System

This section includes some general information you should know when working in the Polycom DMA system. It includes these topics:

- Polycom DMA System Management Interface Access
- Field Input Requirements
- Settings Dialog Box

Polycom DMA System Management Interface Access

The Polycom DMA system has three system user roles that provide access to the management and operations interface. The functions you can perform and parts of the interface you can access depend on your user role or roles:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Menu/Icon</th>
<th>Admin</th>
<th>Provisioner</th>
<th>Auditor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Home. Returns to the Dashboard.</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operations &gt;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Users</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change Password</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Groups</td>
<td>•</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sessions</td>
<td>•</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MCUs</td>
<td>•</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power Management</td>
<td>•</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Backup and Restore</td>
<td>•</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upgrade Management</td>
<td>•</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration &gt; System &gt;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Network</td>
<td>•</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Time</td>
<td>•</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>License</td>
<td>•</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Certificate Management</td>
<td>•</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Security Configuration</td>
<td>•</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enterprise Directory</td>
<td>•</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signaling Configuration</td>
<td>•</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Logging Configuration</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>History Record Retention</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>•</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Session Configuration</td>
<td>•</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local Password Requirements</td>
<td>•</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local Account Configuration</td>
<td>•</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMA Integration</td>
<td>•</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Login Banner</td>
<td>•</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration &gt; MCU &gt;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MCUs</td>
<td>•</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MCU Pools</td>
<td>•</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MCU Pool Orders</td>
<td>•</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Menu/Icon

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Configuration &gt; User Experience &gt;</th>
<th>Admin</th>
<th>Provisioner</th>
<th>Auditor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Conference Templates</td>
<td>•</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Experience Settings</td>
<td>•</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calendaring Service</td>
<td>•</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shared Number Dialing</td>
<td>•</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Configuration &gt; Site Topology &gt;</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sites</td>
<td>•</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Site Links</td>
<td>•</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Site-to-Site Exclusions</td>
<td>•</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Network Clouds</td>
<td>•</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reports &gt;</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Call History</td>
<td>•</td>
<td></td>
<td>•</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conference History</td>
<td>•</td>
<td></td>
<td>•</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enterprise Directory Integration ²</td>
<td>•</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enterprise Passcode Errors</td>
<td>•</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orphaned Groups and Users</td>
<td>•</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conference Room Errors ²</td>
<td>•</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tools &gt;</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ping, Traceroute, Top, I/O Stats, SAR</td>
<td>•</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Log Files ³</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>•</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Help &gt;</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>About DMA 7000</td>
<td>•</td>
<td></td>
<td>•</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Help Contents</td>
<td>•</td>
<td></td>
<td>•</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Must be an enterprise user to see enterprise users. Provisioners can’t add or remove roles and can’t edit user accounts with explicitly assigned roles (Administrator, Provisioner, or Auditor), but can manage their conference rooms.

2. Must be an enterprise user to view this report.

3. Administrators can’t delete log archives.
Field Input Requirements

While every effort was made to internationalize the Polycom DMA system, not all system fields accept Unicode entries. If you work in a language other than English, be aware that some fields accept only ASCII characters.

Settings Dialog Box

The Settings dialog box shows your user name and information about the server you’re logged into. In addition, you can change the text size used in the system interface. Note that larger text sizes will affect how much you can see in a given window or screen size and may require frequent scrolling.

Third-Party Software

Open Source Software

The Polycom DMA system uses several open source software packages, including the CentOS operating system. CentOS is an enterprise-class Linux distribution that contains hundreds of open-source components. For more information about CentOS, visit http://www.centos.org/.

The packages containing the source code and the licenses for all the open-source software, including CentOS and its components, are included on the Polycom DMA system software DVD, mostly in the /SRPMS directory.

Modifying Open Source Code

The LGPL v2.1 license allows you to modify the LGPL code we use, recompile the modified code, and re-link it with our proprietary code. Note that although you’re free to modify the LGPL modules used in the Polycom DMA system in any way you wish, we cannot be responsible if the changes you make impair the system.

To replace an LGPL library with your modified version

1. On the DMA DVD, find the source code for the module you want to modify.
2. Modify the source code and compile it.
3. Go to Configuration > System > Security Settings, select Allow Linux console access, and click Update.
4. Contact Polycom Global Services for the root password for the Polycom DMA server.
5 Use ssh to log into the server as root.
6 Upload the modified software via uget or scp.
7 Find the module you’re replacing and install the new version to that location.
8 Reboot the system.

**License Information**

The following table contains license information for the open source software packages used in the Polycom DMA system. Note that the source code and the licenses for all the open-source software, including CentOS and its components, are included on the Polycom DMA system software DVD. This list is provided as a convenient reference.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Software Name</th>
<th>License</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Axis</td>
<td>Apache License, Version 2.0</td>
<td><a href="http://ws.apache.org/LICENSE.txt">http://ws.apache.org/LICENSE.txt</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bsf</td>
<td>Apache License, Version 2.0</td>
<td><a href="http://www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0">http://www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CentOS</td>
<td>Multiple</td>
<td><a href="http://www.centos.org/">http://www.centos.org/</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commons-beanutils</td>
<td>Apache License, Version 2.0</td>
<td><a href="http://www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0">http://www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commons-cli</td>
<td>Apache License, Version 2.0</td>
<td><a href="http://www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0">http://www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commons-collections</td>
<td>Apache License, Version 2.0</td>
<td><a href="http://www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0">http://www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commons-configuration</td>
<td>Apache License, Version 2.0</td>
<td><a href="http://www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0">http://www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commons-digester</td>
<td>Apache License, Version 2.0</td>
<td><a href="http://www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0">http://www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commons-discovery</td>
<td>Apache License, Version 2.0</td>
<td><a href="http://ws.apache.org/LICENSE.txt">http://ws.apache.org/LICENSE.txt</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commons-fileupload</td>
<td>Apache License, Version 2.0</td>
<td><a href="http://ws.apache.org/LICENSE.txt">http://ws.apache.org/LICENSE.txt</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commons-httpclient</td>
<td>Apache License, Version 2.0</td>
<td><a href="http://www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0">http://www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commons-jo</td>
<td>Apache License, Version 2.0</td>
<td><a href="http://ws.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0">http://ws.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commons-jexl</td>
<td>Apache License, Version 2.0</td>
<td><a href="http://www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0">http://www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Software Name</td>
<td>License</td>
<td>Link</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commons-jxpath</td>
<td>Apache License, Version 2.0</td>
<td><a href="http://www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0">http://www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commons-lang</td>
<td>Apache License, Version 2.0</td>
<td><a href="http://www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0">http://www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commons-logging</td>
<td>Apache License, Version 2.0</td>
<td><a href="http://www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0">http://www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commons-pool</td>
<td>Apache License, Version 2.0</td>
<td><a href="http://www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0">http://www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dom4j</td>
<td>BSD-style</td>
<td><a href="http://www.dom4j.org/license.html">http://www.dom4j.org/license.html</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drools</td>
<td>Apache License, Version 2.0</td>
<td><a href="http://www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0">http://www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gsbase</td>
<td>GSBase Software License</td>
<td><a href="http://gsbase.sourceforge.net/license.html">http://gsbase.sourceforge.net/license.html</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hibernate Annotations</td>
<td>LGPLv2.1</td>
<td><a href="http://www.gnu.org/licenses/old-licenses/lgpl-2.1.html">http://www.gnu.org/licenses/old-licenses/lgpl-2.1.html</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hibernate Core</td>
<td>LGPLv2.1</td>
<td><a href="http://www.gnu.org/licenses/old-licenses/lgpl-2.1.html">http://www.gnu.org/licenses/old-licenses/lgpl-2.1.html</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HyperSQL</td>
<td>HSQL Development Group License</td>
<td><a href="http://hsqldb.org/web/hsqLicense.html">http://hsqldb.org/web/hsqLicense.html</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jamon</td>
<td>BSD-style</td>
<td><a href="http://jamonapi.sourceforge.net/#JAMonLicense">http://jamonapi.sourceforge.net/#JAMonLicense</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JavaBeans Activation Framework</td>
<td>Sun license</td>
<td><a href="https://cds.sun.com/is-bin/INTERSHOP.enfinity/WFS/CDS-CDS_Developer-Site/en_US/-/USD/ViewLicense-Start?LicenseUUID=mtrACUFBoz4AAAAYkcl5AXh_&amp;ProductUUID=zFmACUFBlVoAAEYhxc5AXl.&amp;cnum=&amp;evsref=&amp;sln=">https://cds.sun.com/is-bin/INTERSHOP.enfinity/WFS/CDS-CDS_Developer-Site/en_US/-/USD/ViewLicense-Start?LicenseUUID=mtrACUFBoz4AAAAYkcl5AXh_&amp;ProductUUID=zFmACUFBlVoAAEYhxc5AXl.&amp;cnum=&amp;evsref=&amp;sln=</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JavaMail</td>
<td>Sun License</td>
<td><a href="https://cds.sun.com/is-bin/INTERSHOP.enfinity/WFS/CDS-CDS_Developer-Site/en_US/-/USD/ViewLicense-Start?LicenseUUID=CgxIBe.odCIAAAEICZxgi&amp;ProductUUID=r5dIBe.pitEAAAElUJH6wjk&amp;cnum=&amp;evsref=&amp;sln=">https://cds.sun.com/is-bin/INTERSHOP.enfinity/WFS/CDS-CDS_Developer-Site/en_US/-/USD/ViewLicense-Start?LicenseUUID=CgxIBe.odCIAAAEICZxgi&amp;ProductUUID=r5dIBe.pitEAAAElUJH6wjk&amp;cnum=&amp;evsref=&amp;sln=</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JBOSS AS</td>
<td>LGPLv2.1</td>
<td><a href="http://www.gnu.org/licenses/old-licenses/lgpl-2.1.html">http://www.gnu.org/licenses/old-licenses/lgpl-2.1.html</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JCIFS</td>
<td>LGPL v2.1</td>
<td><a href="http://www.gnu.org/licenses/old-licenses/lgpl-2.1.html">http://www.gnu.org/licenses/old-licenses/lgpl-2.1.html</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JNA</td>
<td>LGPL v2.1</td>
<td><a href="http://www.gnu.org/licenses/old-licenses/lgpl-2.1.html">http://www.gnu.org/licenses/old-licenses/lgpl-2.1.html</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>libxml2</td>
<td>MIT License</td>
<td><a href="http://www.opensource.org/licenses/mit-license.html">http://www.opensource.org/licenses/mit-license.html</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Log4j</td>
<td>Apache License, Version 2.0</td>
<td><a href="http://www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0">http://www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mysql</td>
<td>Commercial License</td>
<td><a href="http://www.mysql.com/about/legal/licensing">http://www.mysql.com/about/legal/licensing</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Software Name</td>
<td>License</td>
<td>Link</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NSS</td>
<td>Mozilla Public License v1.1</td>
<td><a href="http://www.mozilla.org/projects/security/pki/nss/faq.html#q3.1">http://www.mozilla.org/projects/security/pki/nss/faq.html#q3.1</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NSS-tools</td>
<td>Mozilla Public License v1.1</td>
<td><a href="http://www.mozilla.org/projects/security/pki/nss/faq.html#q3.1">http://www.mozilla.org/projects/security/pki/nss/faq.html#q3.1</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NTP</td>
<td>Open Software License v3.0</td>
<td><a href="http://www.opensource.org/licenses/ntp-license.php">http://www.opensource.org/licenses/ntp-license.php</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OpenDS</td>
<td>Common Development and Distribution License (CDDL)</td>
<td><a href="https://opends.dev.java.net/OpenDS.LICENSE">https://opends.dev.java.net/OpenDS.LICENSE</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OpenSSH</td>
<td>OpenSSH v1.19</td>
<td><a href="http://www.openssh.org/">http://www.openssh.org/</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OpenSSL</td>
<td>OpenSSL</td>
<td><a href="http://www.openssl.org/source/license.html">http://www.openssl.org/source/license.html</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Python</td>
<td>Python Software Foundation License Version 2</td>
<td><a href="http://www.python.org/download/releases/2.6.2/license/">http://www.python.org/download/releases/2.6.2/license/</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SNMP4j</td>
<td>Apache License, Version 2</td>
<td><a href="http://ws.apache.org/LICENSE.txt">http://ws.apache.org/LICENSE.txt</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sudo</td>
<td>Sudo</td>
<td><a href="http://www.gratisoft.us/sudo/license.html">http://www.gratisoft.us/sudo/license.html</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xerces2</td>
<td>Apache License, Version 2.0</td>
<td><a href="http://www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0">http://www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
This chapter describes the configuration tasks required to complete your implementation of a new Polycom® Distributed Media Application™ (DMA™) 7000 system once installation and initial network configuration are complete.

This chapter assumes you’ve completed the Getting Started Guide’s server configuration procedure, logged into the Polycom DMA system’s management interface, and verified that the Network Status section of the Dashboard shows (for a two-server configuration) two cluster members, with healthy enterprise and private network status for both.

Initial configuration includes the following topics:

**System configuration**
- Add Required DNS Records for the Polycom DMA System
- License the Polycom DMA System
- Configure Signaling
- Set Up Security
- Set Up MCUs
- Connect to an Enterprise Directory
- Set Up Conference Templates

**Confirming configuration**
- Test the System

Each topic describes the task, provides background and overview information for it, and where appropriate, links to specific step-by-step procedures to follow in order to complete the task.
Add Required DNS Records for the Polycom DMA System

In order to access your Polycom DMA system by its host name instead of by IP address, you must create an A (alias) record (for IPv4) and/or AAAA record (for IPv6) on your DNS server.

For a two-server cluster configuration, at a minimum, create a record for the virtual host name and IP address assigned to the Polycom DMA system. We recommend that you create an alias record for each of the system’s three host names and IP addresses.

Note
These topics outline the configuration tasks that are generally required. You may wish to complete other optional configuration tasks, including:

- Enable cascading of conferences (see “About Cascading” on page 78).
- Configure calendaring service (“Calendaring Service” on page 101).

The DNS server(s) should also have entries for your Active Directory server (if different from the DNS server) and gatekeeper.

License the Polycom DMA System

The Polycom DMA system license you purchased specifies how many and what type of MCUs the system can use as conferencing resources. You should have received either one or two license numbers, depending on whether you ordered a single-server system or a two-server cluster.

You must obtain an activation key code for each server from the Polycom Resource Center. You enter the server’s serial number and the license number that you were given for that server, and the PRC generates an activation key for that server. For a cluster, you repeat the process using the other server’s serial number and its license number. Installing the activation keys activates the licenses for your system.
To activate the system license, follow the procedure in “License” on page 46.

Configure Signaling

Signaling setup includes enabling H.323, SIP, or both, registering with an H.323 gatekeeper, and setting the prefix for dialing into the system.

To configure signaling, follow the procedure in “Signaling Configuration” on page 47.

When you configure a two-server Polycom DMA system to use a gatekeeper, each node in the cluster independently registers its IP address with the gatekeeper, using the configured prefix as a service registration.

Once registration is complete, the Polycom DMA system is ready to receive calls using the E.164 prefix with which the system registered.

On a Polycom CMA 5000 v5.0 or newer gatekeeper, Polycom DMA system shows up as a DMA Cluster with one alias. On other gatekeepers, the two nodes of the system appear as two MCUs using the same prefix.

Set Up Security

The first step in securing your Polycom DMA system is to locate it in a secure data center with controlled access, but that topic is beyond the scope of this document.

Secure setup of the Polycom DMA system consists of the following high-level tasks (some of which overlap with subsequent initial setup topics):

1. As the default local administrative user (admin), create a local user account for yourself with the Administrator role, log in using that account, and delete the admin user account. See “Adding Users Overview” on page 143 and “Users Procedures” on page 152.

2. Create the service account (read-only user account) that the Polycom DMA system will use to read the enterprise directory and integrate with the enterprise directory. See “Enterprise Directory Integration Procedure” on page 114.
3 Assign the Administrator role to your named enterprise account, and remove the Polycom DMA system’s user roles (see “User Roles Overview” on page 142) from the service account used to integrate with the enterprise directory. See “Connect to an Enterprise Directory” on page 15 and “Enterprise Directory” on page 109.

4 Log out and log back in using your enterprise user ID and password.

5 Verify that the expected enterprise users are available in the Polycom DMA system and that conference room IDs were successfully created for them. If necessary, adjust integration settings and correct errors. See “Enterprise Directory” on page 109, “Users Procedures” on page 152, and “Conference Room Errors Report” on page 200.


7 Document your current configuration for comparison in the future. We recommend saving screen captures of all the configuration pages.

8 Manually create a backup, download it, and store it in a safe place. See “Backing Up and Restoring” on page 176.

---

**Set Up MCUs**

Make sure your RMX MCUs are configured to accept encrypted (HTTPS) management connections (required for maximum security mode) and add them to the Polycom DMA system. See “Device Management” on page 59.

**Note**

The currently installed license determines the number and type of MCUs that the Polycom DMA system can properly provision and communicate with.

The Polycom DMA system uses conference templates to define the conferencing experience associated with a conference room or enterprise group. You can create standalone templates (recommended), setting the conferencing parameters directly in the Polycom DMA system, or link templates to RMX conference profiles (see “Conference Templates” on page 75).

Both methods allow you to specify most conference parameters:

- General information such as line rate, encryption, auto termination, and H.239 settings
- Video settings such as mode (presentation or lecture) and layout
- IVR settings
- Conference recording settings
If you want to create DMA system templates linked to conference profiles on the RMX MCUs, make sure the profiles used by the Polycom DMA system exist on all the RMX MCUs and are defined the same on all of them.

**Connect to an Enterprise Directory**

Connecting to an enterprise directory (Microsoft Active Directory is currently supported) simplifies the task of deploying conferencing to a large organization. All Polycom DMA system access to the enterprise directory is read-only and minimally impacts the directory performance. See “Enterprise Directory” on page 109.

**Note**

If you’re not knowledgeable about enterprise directories in general and your specific implementation in particular, please consult with someone who is. Enterprise directory integration is a non-trivial matter that should have been thoroughly discussed and planned for prior to system installation.

Before integrating with the enterprise directory, be sure that one or more DNS servers are specified (this should have been done during installation and initial setup). See “Network” on page 41.

Enterprise directory integration automatically makes the enterprise users (directory members) into Conferencing Users in the Polycom DMA system, and can assign each of them a conference room (virtual meeting room). The conference room IDs are typically generated from the enterprise users’ phone numbers.

**Note**

Creating conference rooms (virtual meeting rooms) for enterprise users is optional. If you want to integrate with the enterprise directory to load user and group information into the Polycom DMA system, but don’t want to give all users the ability to host conferences, you can do so. Then you can manually add conference rooms for selected users. See “Conference Rooms Procedures” on page 154.

Once the Polycom DMA system is integrated with an enterprise directory, it reads the directory information daily, so that user and group information is updated automatically as people join and leave the organization. The system caches the data from the enterprise directory. Between updates, it needs to access the directory only to authenticate passwords; all other user information (such as user search results) comes from its cache.

Enterprise groups can have their own conference templates that provide a custom conferencing experience (see “Conference Templates” on page 75). They can also have their own MCU pool order, which preferentially routes conferences to certain MCUs (see “MCU Pool Orders” on page 70).
You can assign Polycom DMA system roles to an enterprise group, applying the roles to all members of the group and enabling them to log into the Polycom DMA system’s management interface with their standard network user names and passwords.

See “User Roles Overview” on page 142, “Groups” on page 156, and “Enterprise Groups Procedures” on page 159.

There are security concerns that need to be addressed regarding user accounts, whether local or enterprise. See the high-level process described in “” on page 13.

Set Up Conference Templates

The Polycom DMA system uses conference templates and global conference settings to manage system and conference behavior, and it has a default conference template and default global conference settings.

After you’ve added MCUs to the system, you may want to change the global conference settings or create additional templates that specify different conference properties.

If you integrate with an enterprise directory, you can use templates to provide customized conferencing experiences for various enterprise groups.

When you add a custom conference room to a user (either local or enterprise), you can choose which template that conference room uses.

To add conference templates, see “Conference Templates Procedures” on page 98. To change conference settings, see “User Experience Settings” on page 100. To customize the conferencing experience for an enterprise group, see “Enterprise Groups Procedures” on page 159.

Test the System

On the Dashboard, verify that:

- The **MCUs** section lists all the MCUs you added, and they’re all connected and in service.
- If you enabled H.323, the **H.323 Signaling Status** section indicates that the system is properly registered with the gatekeeper (if you chose to do so) or is configured for IP-only calls (if you didn’t).
- If you enabled SIP, the **SIP Signaling Status** section shows the address and the listening ports that are enabled.
- The **Network Status** section shows that:
For a two-server cluster, there are two cluster members and that all the network interfaces that should be working (depending on your IP type and split network settings) are up (green up arrow) and in full duplex mode, with the private network speed at 1000 Mbps and the enterprise network speed correct for your network.

For a single-server system, there is one cluster member and that the network interfaces that should be working (depending on your IP type and split network settings) are up (green up arrow) and in full duplex mode, with the speed correct for your enterprise network.

The System Information section’s details look correct, including the time, enterprise directory status and conference room count, and custom conference room count.

Set up some multipoint conferences by having endpoints dial into enterprise users’ conference rooms (preferably including a custom conference room). Verify that conferencing works satisfactorily, that the system status is good, and that the Dashboard accurately presents the status.

When you’re satisfied that the Polycom DMA system is configured and working properly, manually create a backup, download it, and store it in a safe place. See “Backing Up and Restoring” on page 176.
This chapter describes the following Polycom® Distributed Media Application™ (DMA™) 7000 system security topics:

- Management and Security Overview
- Certificate Management
- Certificate Procedures
- Security Configuration
- Session Configuration
- Local Password Requirements
- Local Account Configuration
- Login Banner

**Management and Security Overview**

**How Certificates Work**

X.509 certificates are a security technology that assists networked computers in determining whether to trust each other.

- A single, centralized certificate authority is established. Typically, this is either an enterprise’s IT department or a commercial certificate authority.
- Each computer on the network is configured to trust the central certificate authority.
- Each server on the network has a public certificate that identifies it.
- The certificate authority signs the public certificates of those servers that clients should trust.
When a client connects to a server, the server shows its signed public certificate to the client. Trust is established because the certificate has been signed by the certificate authority, and the client has been configured to trust the certificate authority.

**Forms of Certificates Accepted by the Polycom DMA System**

X.509 certificates come in several forms (encoding and protocol). The following table shows the forms that can be installed in the Polycom DMA system.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Encoding</th>
<th>Protocol / File Type</th>
<th>Description and Installation Method</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| PEM (Base64-encoded ASCII text) | PKCS #7 protocol P7B file | Certificate chain containing:  
  - A signed certificate for the system, authenticating its public key.  
  - The CA's public certificate.  
  - Sometimes intermediate certificates.  
  Upload file or paste into text box. |
| CER (single certificate) file | Signed certificate for the system, authenticating its public key.  
Upload file or paste into text box. |
| Certificate text | Encoded certificate text copied from CA's email or secure web page.  
Paste into text box. |
| DER (binary format using ASN.1 Distinguished Encoding Rules) | PKCS #12 protocol PFX file | Certificate chain containing:  
  - A signed certificate for the system, authenticating its public key.  
  - A private key for the system.  
  - The CA's public certificate.  
  Upload file. |
| PKCS #7 protocol P7B file | Certificate chain containing:  
  - A signed certificate for the system, authenticating its public key.  
  - The CA's public certificate.  
  - Sometimes intermediate certificates.  
  Upload file. |
| CER (single certificate) file | Signed certificate for the system, authenticating its public key.  
Upload file. |
How Certificates Are Used by the Polycom DMA System

The Polycom DMA system uses X.509 certificates in four different ways:

1. When a user logs into the Polycom DMA system’s browser-based management interface, the Polycom DMA system (server) offers an X.509 certificate to identify itself to the browser (client).

   The Polycom DMA system’s certificate must have been signed by a certificate authority (see “Certificate Procedures” on page 26).

   The browser must be configured to trust that certificate authority (beyond the scope of this documentation).

   If trust can’t be established, most browsers allow connection anyway, but display a ‘nag’ dialog to the user, requesting permission.

2. When the Polycom DMA system connects to a Microsoft Active Directory server, it may present a certificate to the Microsoft Active Directory server to identify itself.

   If the Microsoft Active Directory is configured to require a client certificate (this is not the default), the Polycom DMA system offers the same SSL server certificate that it offers to browsers connecting to the system management interface. The Microsoft Active Directory must be configured to trust the certificate authority, or it rejects the certificate and the connection fails.

3. When the Polycom DMA system connects to a Microsoft Exchange server (if the calendaring service is enabled; see “Calendaring Service” on page 101), it may present a certificate to the Microsoft Exchange server to identify itself.

   Unless the Allow unencrypted calendar notifications from Exchange server security option is enabled (see “Security Configuration” on page 32), the Polycom DMA system offers the same SSL server certificate that it offers to browsers connecting to the system management interface. The Microsoft Exchange server must be configured to trust the certificate authority. Otherwise, the Calendaring Service status (see “Dashboard” on page 166) remains Subscription pending indefinitely, the Polycom DMA system does not receive calendar notifications, and incoming meeting request messages are only processed approximately every 4 minutes.

4. When the Polycom DMA system connects to an RMX MCU configured for secure communications (this is not the default), a certificate may be used to identify the RMX MCU (server) to the Polycom DMA system (client).

Frequently Asked Questions

Q. Is it secure to send my certificate request through email?
A. Yes. The certificate request, signed certificate, intermediate certificates, and authority certificates that are sent through email don’t contain any secret information. There is no security risk in letting untrusted third parties see their contents.

As a precaution, you can verify the certificate fingerprints (which can be found in the Certificate Details popup) with the certificate authority via telephone. This ensures that a malicious third party didn’t substitute a fake email message with fake certificates.

Q. Why doesn’t the information on the Certificate Details popup match the information that I filled out in the signing request form?

A. Commercial certificate authorities routinely replace the organizational information in the certificate with their own slightly different description of your organization.

Q. I re-installed the Polycom DMA system software. Why can’t I re-install my signed public certificate?

A. X.509 certificates use public/private key pair technology. The public key is contained in your public certificate and is provided to any web browser that asks for it. The private key never leaves the Polycom DMA system.

As part of software installation, the Polycom DMA system generates a new public/private key pair. The public key from your old key pair can’t be used with the new private key.

To re-use your signed public certificate, try restoring from backup. Both the public and private keys are saved as part of a backup file.

See also:

“Certificate Management” on page 22

“Certificate Procedures” on page 26

Certificate Management

The following table describes the fields on the Certificate Management page.
Table 3-1  Fields on the Certificate Management page

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enable OCSP</td>
<td>Enables the use of Online Certificate Status Protocol as a means of obtaining the revocation status of a certificate presented to the system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If <strong>OCSP responder URL</strong> is not specified, the system checks the certificate’s AuthorityInfoAccess (AIA) extension fields for the location of an OCSP responder:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If there is none, the certificate fails validation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Otherwise, the system sends the OCSP request to the responder identified in the certificate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If <strong>OCSP responder URL</strong> is specified, the system sends the OCSP request to that responder.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The responder returns a message indicating whether the certificate is good, revoked, or unknown.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If <strong>OCSP certificate</strong> is specified, the response message must be signed by the specified certificate’s private key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OCSP responder URL</td>
<td>Identifies the responder to be used for all OCSP requests, overriding the AIA field values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If <strong>OCSP certificate</strong> is specified, the response message must be signed by the specified certificate’s private key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OCSP certificate</td>
<td>Select a certificate to require OCSP response messages to be signed by the specified certificate’s private key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Save OCSP Configuration</td>
<td>Saves the OCSP configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identifier</td>
<td>Common name of the certificate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purpose</td>
<td>Kind of certificate:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Server SSL is the DMA system’s public certificate, which it presents to identify itself. By default, this is a self-signed certificate, not trusted by other computers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Trusted Root CA is the root certificate of a certificate authority that the DMA system trusts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Intermediate CA is a CA certificate that trusted root CAs issue themselves to sign certificate signing requests (reducing the likelihood of their root certificate being compromised). If the DMA system trusts the root CA, then the chain consisting of it, its intermediate CA certificates, and the server certificate will all be trusted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expiration</td>
<td>Expiration date of certificate.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Certificate Information Dialog Box

The Certificate Information dialog box appears when you click Create Certificate Signing Request in the Actions list (if a signing request has already been issued, you’re first asked whether to use the existing one or create a new one). The following table describes the fields in the dialog box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Common name (CN)</td>
<td>Defaults to the FQDN of the system’s management interface, as defined by the virtual host name and domain specified on the Network page. Editable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organizational unit (OU)</td>
<td>Subdivision of organization. Optional. Specify up to three OUs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organization (O)</td>
<td>Optional.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>City or locality (L)</td>
<td>Optional.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>State (ST)</td>
<td>Optional.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Country (C)</td>
<td>Two-character country code.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Certificate Signing Request Dialog Box

The Certificate Signing Request dialog box appears when you create a request in the Certificate Information dialog box.

The Summary section at the top displays the information the Certificate Information dialog box.

The Encoded Request box below displays the encoded certificate request text, which you can select and copy.
Add Certificates Dialog Box

The Add Certificates dialog box appears when you click Add Certificates in the Actions list. It lets you install signed certificates or certificate chains. You can do so in two ways:

- Upload a PFX, PEM, or P7B certificate file.
- Paste PEM-format certificate text into the dialog box.

The following table describes the fields in the dialog box.

**Table 3-3 Fields in the Add Certificates dialog box**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Upload certificate</td>
<td>If checked, the Password field and Upload file button enable you to upload a PFX, PEM, or P7B certificate file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>Enter the password, if any, assigned to the certificate file when it was created.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upload file</td>
<td>Click the button to browse to the file you want to upload.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paste certificate</td>
<td>If checked, the text field below enables you to paste in the text of PEM certificate files.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Certificate Details Dialog Box

The Certificate Details dialog box appears when you click Display Details in the Actions list. It displays information about the certificate selected in the list, as outlined in the following table.

See also:

“Management and Security Overview” on page 19

“Certificate Management” on page 22

“Certificate Procedures” on page 26
Certificate Procedures

Certificate procedures include the following:

- Install your chosen certificate authority’s public certificate, if necessary, so that the Polycom DMA system trusts that certificate authority.
- Create a certificate signing request to submit to the certificate authority.
- Install a public certificate signed by your certificate authority that identifies the Polycom DMA system.
- Remove a signed certificate or a certificate authority’s certificate.

Table 3-4  Sections in the Certificate Details dialog box

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Certificate Info</td>
<td>Purpose and alias of the certificate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Issued To</td>
<td>Information about the entity to which the certificate was issued and the certificate serial number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Issued By</td>
<td>Information about the issuer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Validity</td>
<td>Issue and expiration dates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fingerprints</td>
<td>SHA1 and MD5 fingerprints (checksums) for confirming certificate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subject Alternative Names</td>
<td>Additional identities bound to the subject of the certificate. For the Polycom DMA system, this should include the virtual and physical FQDNs, short host names, and IP addresses of the system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extended Key Usage</td>
<td>Indicates the purposes for which the certificate can be used. The Polycom DMA system's certificate is used for both server and client connections, so this should always contain at least serverAuth and clientAuth.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also:

“Management and Security Overview” on page 19
“Certificate Management” on page 22
“Certificate Procedures” on page 26
Install a Certificate Authority’s Certificate

This procedure is not necessary if you obtain a certificate chain that includes a signed certificate for the Polycom DMA system, your certificate authority’s public certificate, and any intermediate certificates.

Use this procedure to add a trusted certificate authority, either an in-house or commercial certificate authority.

Caution

Installing or removing certificates requires a system restart and terminates all active conferences.

When you install or remove a certificate, the change is made to the certificate store immediately, but the system can’t implement the change until it restarts and reads the changed certificate store.

For your convenience, you’re not required to restart and apply a change immediately. This permits you to perform multiple installs or removals before restarting and applying the changes. But when you’re finished making changes, you must select **Restart to Apply Saved Changes** to restart the system and finish your update. Before you begin, make sure there are no active conferences and you’re prepared to restart the system when you’re finished.

To install a certificate for a trusted root CA

1. Go to **Configuration > System > Certificate Management**.

   The installed certificates are listed. The **Trusted Root CA** entries, if any, represent the certificate authorities whose public certificates are already installed on the DMA system and are thus trusted.

2. If you’re using a certificate authority that isn’t listed, obtain a copy of your certificate authority’s public certificate.

   The certificate must be either a single X.509 certificate or a PKCS#7 certificate chain. If it’s ASCII text, it’s in PEM format, and starts with the text `-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----`. If it’s a file, it can be either PEM or DER encoded.

3. In the **Actions** list, select **Add Certificates**.
4 In the **Add Certificates** dialog box, do one of the following:
   - If you have a file, click **Upload certificate**, enter the password (if any) for the file, and browse to the file or enter the path and file name.
   - If you have PEM-format text, copy the certificate text, click **Paste certificate**, and paste it into the text box below.

5 Click **OK**.

6 Verify that the certificate appears in the list as a *Trusted Root CA*.

7 Click **Restart to Apply Saved Changes**, and when asked to confirm that you want to restart the system so that certificate changes can take effect, click **OK**.

See also:

- “Management and Security Overview” on page 19
- “Certificate Management” on page 22
- “Certificate Procedures” on page 26

---

**Create a Certificate Signing Request in the DMA System**

The procedure below creates a certificate signing request (CSR) that you can submit to your chosen certificate authority.

**To create a certificate signing request**

1 Go to Configuration > System > Certificate Management.
   By default, the system is configured to use a self-signed certificate.

2 To see details of the public certificate currently being used to identify the system to other computers:
   - In the list, select the *Server SSL* certificate.
   - In the **Actions** list, select **Display Details**.
     The Certificate Details dialog box appears. If this is the default self-signed certificate, **Organizational Unit** is *Self Signed Certificate*.
   - To close the dialog box, click **OK**.

3 In the **Actions** list, select **Create Certificate Signing Request**.
   If you’ve created a signing request before, you’re asked if you want to use your existing certificate request or generate a new one. Elect to generate a new one.
4 In the **Certificate Information** dialog box, enter the identifying information for your Polycom DMA system (see “Certificate Information Dialog Box” on page 24) and click **OK**.

The **Certificate Signing Request** dialog box displays the encoded request (see “Certificate Signing Request Dialog Box” on page 24).

5 Copy the entire contents of the **Encoded Request** box (including the text -----BEGIN NEW CERTIFICATE REQUEST----- and -----END NEW CERTIFICATE REQUEST-----) and submit it to your certificate authority.

Depending on the certificate authority, your CSR may be submitted via email or by pasting into a web page.

6 Click **OK** to close the dialog box.

When your certificate authority has processed your request, it sends you a signed public certificate for your Polycom DMA system. Some certificate authorities also send intermediate certificates and/or root certificates. Depending on the certificate authority, these certificates may arrive as email text, email attachments, or be available on a secure web page.

The Polycom DMA system accepts PKCS#7 or PKCS#12 certificate chains or single certificates.

---

**Caution**

When you submit the CSR to your CA, make sure that the CA doesn’t modify any of the predefined SAN fields or the X.509v3 Key Usage or Extended Key Usage fields. Changes to these fields may make your system unusable. Contact Polycom technical support if you have any questions about this.

---

See also:

- “Management and Security Overview” on page 19
- “Certificate Management” on page 22
- “Certificate Procedures” on page 26

---

**Install a Certificate in the DMA System**

The procedure below installs the certificate or certificate chain provided by the certificate authority. It assumes that you’ve received the certificate or certificate chain in one of the following forms:

- A PFX, P7B, or single certificate file that you’ve saved on your computer.
• PEM-format encoded text that you received in an email or on a secure web page.

Caution
Installing or removing certificates requires a system restart and terminates all active conferences.
When you install or remove a certificate, the change is made to the certificate store immediately, but the system can’t implement the change until it restarts and reads the changed certificate store.
For your convenience, you’re not required to restart and apply a change immediately. This permits you to perform multiple installs or removals before restarting and applying the changes. But when you’re finished making changes, you must select Restart to Apply Saved Changes to restart the system and finish your update. Before you begin, make sure there are no active conferences and you’re prepared to restart the system when you’re finished.

To install a signed certificate that identifies the Polycom DMA system

1 When you receive your certificate(s), return to Configuration > System > Certificate Management.

2 In the Actions list, select Add Certificates.

3 In the Add Certificates dialog box, do one of the following:
   – If you have a PFX, P7B, or single certificate file, click Upload certificate, enter the password (if any) for the file, and browse to the file or enter the path and file name.
   – If you have PEM-format text, copy the certificate text, click Paste certificate, and paste it into the text box below. You can paste multiple PEM certificates one after the other.

4 Click OK.

5 To verify that the new signed certificate has replaced the default self-signed certificate:
   a In the list of certificates, once again select the Server SSL certificate.
   b In the Actions list, select Display Details.
      The Certificate Details dialog box appears.
   c Confirm from the information under Issued To and Issued By that the self-signed default certificate has been replaced by your signed public certificate from the certificate authority.
   d Click OK to close the dialog box.

6 Click Restart to Apply Saved Changes, and when asked to confirm that you want to restart the system so that certificate changes can take effect, click OK.
Certificate Procedures

See also:
“Management and Security Overview” on page 19
“Certificate Management” on page 22
“Certificate Procedures” on page 26

Remove a Certificate from the DMA System

There are two kinds of certificate removal:

• Removing the certificate of a Trusted Root CA so that the system no longer trusts certificates signed by that certificate authority.

• Removing the signed certificate currently in use as the Server SSL certificate so that the system reverts to using the default self-signed Server SSL certificate.

Removing a signed certificate also removes the certificate of the Trusted Root CA that signed it, along with any intermediate certificates provided by that certificate authority.

Both procedures are described below.

Caution
Installing or removing certificates requires a system restart and terminates all active conferences.

When you install or remove a certificate, the change is made to the certificate store immediately, but the system can’t implement the change until it restarts and reads the changed certificate store.

For your convenience, you’re not required to restart and apply a change immediately. This permits you to perform multiple installs or removals before restarting and applying the changes. But when you’re finished making changes, you must select Restart to Apply Saved Changes to restart the system and finish your update. Before you begin, make sure there are no active conferences and you’re prepared to restart the system when you’re finished.

To remove a Trusted Root CA’s certificate

2. In the certificates list, select the certificate you want to delete.
3. In the Actions list, select Display Details and confirm that you’ve selected the correct certificate. Then click OK.
4. In the Actions list, select Delete Certificate.
5. When asked to confirm, click Yes.
   A dialog box informs you that the certificate has been deleted.
6. Click OK.
7  Click **Restart to Apply Saved Changes**, and when asked to confirm that you want to restart the system so that certificate changes can take effect, click **OK**.

**To remove a signed certificate and revert to the default self-signed certificate**

1  Go to **Configuration > System > Certificate Management**.
2  In the **Actions** list, select **Revert to Default Certificate**.
3  When asked to confirm, click **Yes**.
   
   A dialog box informs you that the system has reverted to a self-signed certificate.
4  Click **OK**.
5  Click **Restart to Apply Saved Changes**, and when asked to confirm that you want to restart the system so that certificate changes can take effect, click **OK**.
6  After the system restarts, log back in, return to **Configuration > System > Certificate Management**, and verify that the system has reverted to the default self-signed certificate:
   
   a  In the list of certificates, select the **Server SSL** certificate.
   
   b  In the **Actions** list, select **Display Details**.
      
      The **Certificate Details** dialog box appears.
   
   c  Confirm from the information under **Issued To** and **Issued By** that the default self-signed certificate has replaced the CA-signed certificate.
   
   d  Click **OK** to close the dialog box.

See also:

“**Management and Security Overview**” on page 19

“**Certificate Management**” on page 22

“**Certificate Procedures**” on page 26

---

**Security Configuration**

The **Security Configuration** page lets you switch between high security mode and a custom security mode in which one or more insecure capabilities are allowed.
**Caution**

The setting labeled *Maximum security* in previous versions of the DMA software has been renamed *High security*. We recommend always using the *High security* setting unless you have a specific and compelling need to allow one of the insecure capabilities.

The following table describes the options in the **Security Configuration** page.

**Table 3-5  Fields on the Security Configuration page**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>High security</strong></td>
<td>Recommended setting for normal operation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Custom security</strong></td>
<td>Lets you enable one or more of the unsecured methods of network access listed below it.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Allow Linux console access**              | Enables the Linux user root to log into the system using SSH. This direct Linux access isn’t needed for normal operation, routine maintenance, or even troubleshooting, all of which can be done through the administrative GUI.  
In extreme circumstances, this option might enable expert Polycom Global Services personnel to more fully understand the state of a troubled system or correct problems. Enable this option only when asked to do so by Polycom Global Services. |
| **Allow unencrypted connections to the enterprise directory** | Normally, the Polycom DMA system connects to an enterprise directory using SSL or TLS encryption. But if the Active Directory server or servers (including domain controllers if you import global groups) aren’t configured to support encryption, the Polycom DMA system can only connect using an unencrypted protocol. This option allows such connections if an encrypted connection can’t be established.  
This configuration causes an extreme security flaw: the unencrypted passwords of enterprise users are transmitted over the network, where they can easily be intercepted.  
Use this option only for diagnostic purposes. By toggling it, you can determine whether encryption is the cause of a failure to connect to an enterprise directory or to load group data. If so, the solution is to correctly configure the relevant servers, not to allow ongoing use of unencrypted connections. |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Allow unencrypted connections to MCUs</td>
<td>Normally, the Polycom DMA system uses only HTTPS for the conference control connection to RMX MCUs, and therefore can’t control an RMX MCU that accepts only HTTP (the default). This option enables the system to fall back to HTTP for RMX MCUs not configured for HTTPS. We recommend configuring your MCUs to accept encrypted connections rather than enabling this option. When unencrypted connections are used, the RMX login name and password are sent unencrypted over the network.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow unencrypted SIP connections</td>
<td>Normally, if SIP signaling is enabled, the Polycom DMA system accepts only SIP calls using the TLS (Transport Layer Security) protocol and uses TLS to send these calls to RMX MCUs. This option enables the system to accept unencrypted calls from endpoints not configured for TLS and to send unencrypted calls to RMX MCUs not configured for TLS. We recommend configuring your endpoints and MCUs to use TLS for SIP rather than enabling this option.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow unencrypted calendar notifications from Exchange server</td>
<td>Normally, if calendaring is enabled, the Polycom DMA system gives the Microsoft Exchange server an HTTPS URL to which the Exchange server can deliver calendar notifications. In that case, the Polycom DMA system must have a certificate that the Exchange server accepts in order for the HTTPS connection to work. If this option is selected, the Polycom DMA system does not require HTTPS for calendar notifications. We recommend installing a certificate trusted by the Exchange server and using an HTTPS URL for notifications rather than enabling this option.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow basic authentication to Exchange server</td>
<td>Normally, if calendaring is enabled, the Polycom DMA system authenticates itself with the Exchange server using NTLM authentication. If this option is selected, the Polycom DMA system still attempts to use NTLM first. But if that fails or isn’t enabled on the Exchange server, then the DMA system falls back to HTTP Basic authentication (user name and password). We recommend using NTLM authentication rather than enabling this option. In order for either NTLM or HTTP Basic authentication to work, they must be enabled on the Exchange server.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
To change the security configuration

1  Go to Configuration > System > Security Configuration.

2  To switch from a custom setting back to the recommended security mode, click High security.

3  To switch from the recommended security mode to a custom setting:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Skip certificate validation for server connecting</td>
<td>Normally, when the Polycom DMA system connects to a server, it validates that server’s certificate. This option configures the system to accept any certificate presented to it without validating it. We recommend using valid certificates for all servers that the system may need to contact rather than enabling this option. Depending on system configuration, this may include: MCUs Active Directory Exchange CMA system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skip certificate validation for encrypted signaling</td>
<td>Normally, during encrypted call signaling (SIP over TLS), the Polycom DMA system requires the remote party (endpoint or MCU) to present a valid certificate. This option configures the system to accept any certificate (or none). We recommend installing valid certificates on your endpoints and MCUs rather than enabling this option.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skip certificate validation for user login sessions</td>
<td>Unlike the preceding settings, this option is compatible with the High security setting. If this option is turned off, you can only connect to the Polycom DMA system if your browser presents a client certificate issued by a CA that the system trusts. Turn this option off only if: • You’ve implemented a complete public key infrastructure (PKI) system, including a CA server, client software (and optionally hardware, tokens, or smartcards), and the appropriate operational procedures. • The CA’s public certificate is installed in the Polycom DMA system so that it trusts the CA. • All authorized users, including yourself, have a client certificate signed by the CA that authenticates them to the Polycom DMA system.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
a  Click **Custom security**.

b  Check the unsecured network access method(s) that you want to enable.

4  Click **Update**.

   A dialog box informs you that the configuration has been updated.

**Note**

If you turn off **Skip certificate validation for user login sessions**, the system notifies you that if you don’t log back in within 5 minutes, the setting will be automatically turned back on. This is a safety precaution to ensure that at least one user is still able to access the system.

5  Click **OK**.

See also:

   “Management and Security Overview” on page 19
   “Certificate Management” on page 22
   “Certificate Procedures” on page 26
   “Session Configuration” on page 36
   “Local Password Requirements” on page 37
   “Local Account Configuration” on page 39
   “Login Banner” on page 40

**Session Configuration**

The **Session Configuration** page lets you increase system security by limiting the number and length of login sessions.

You can see the current login sessions and terminate sessions by going to **Operations > Sessions**. See “**Sessions**” on page 170.

The following table describes the fields on the **Session Configuration** page.
Local Password Requirements

The **Local Password Requirements** page lets you increase system security by specifying age, length, and complexity requirements for the passwords of local administrator, auditor, and provisioner users. These rules don’t apply to conferencing users’ conference and chairperson passcodes, or to enterprise directory users.

The following table describes the fields on the **Local Password Requirements** page.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Active system sessions        | Specify the number of simultaneous login sessions by all users or select **Unlimited**.  
  Note: If this limit is reached, but none of the logged-in users is an Administrator, the first Administrator user to arrive is granted access, and the system terminates the non-Administrator session that’s been idle the longest. |
| Active sessions per user      | Specify the number of simultaneous login sessions per user ID or select **Unlimited**. |
| Session timeout (minutes)     | Specify the length of time after which the system terminates a session for inactivity or select **Unlimited**. |

See also:

“Management and Security Overview” on page 19  
“Certificate Management” on page 22  
“Certificate Procedures” on page 26  
“Security Configuration” on page 32  
“Local Password Requirements” on page 37  
“Local Account Configuration” on page 39  
“Login Banner” on page 40
### Table 3-7 Fields on the Local Password Requirements page

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Password Management</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum password age (days)</td>
<td>Specify at what age a password expires.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum password age (days)</td>
<td>Specify how frequently a password can be changed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum length</td>
<td>Specify the number of characters a password must contain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum changed characters</td>
<td>Specify the number of characters that must be different from the previous password.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reject previous passwords</td>
<td>Specify how many of the user’s previous passwords the system remembers and won’t permit to be reused.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Password Complexity</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow username or its reverse form</td>
<td>Turns off the protection against a password containing the user’s login name or its reverse.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lowercase letters</td>
<td>Specify the number of lowercase letters (a-z) that a password must contain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uppercase letters</td>
<td>Specify the number of uppercase letters (A-Z) that a password must contain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Numbers</td>
<td>Specify the number of digit characters (0-9) that a password must contain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Special characters</td>
<td>Specify the number of non-alphanumeric keyboard characters that a password must contain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum consecutive repeated characters</td>
<td>Specify how many sequential characters may be the same.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also:

- “Management and Security Overview” on page 19
- “Certificate Management” on page 22
- “Certificate Procedures” on page 26
- “Security Configuration” on page 32
- “Session Configuration” on page 36
- “Local Account Configuration” on page 39
- “Login Banner” on page 40
Local Account Configuration

The Local Account Configuration page lets you increase system security by:

- Locking out users who have exceeded the specified number and frequency of login failures. The system locks the account either indefinitely or for the length of time you specify.
- Disabling accounts that have been inactive a specified number of days.

The following table describes the fields on the Local Account Configuration page.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Account Lockout</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable account lockout</td>
<td>Turns on lockout feature and enables lockout configuration fields below.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Failed login threshold</td>
<td>Specify how many consecutive login failures cause the system to lock an account.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Failed login window (hours)</td>
<td>Specify the time span within which the consecutive failures must occur in order to lock the account.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customize user account lockout duration</td>
<td>If selected, specify how long the user's account remains locked. If not selected, the lockout is indefinite, and a user with a locked account must contact an Administrator to unlock it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Account Inactivity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customize account inactivity threshold</td>
<td>Turns on disabling of inactive accounts and lets you specify the inactivity threshold that triggers disabling.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also:

- “Management and Security Overview” on page 19
- “Certificate Management” on page 22
- “Certificate Procedures” on page 26
- “Security Configuration” on page 32
- “Session Configuration” on page 36
- “Local Password Requirements” on page 37
- “Local Account Configuration” on page 39
- “Login Banner” on page 40
# Login Banner

A login banner is a message that appears when users attempt to access the system. They must acknowledge the message before they can log in.

The **Login Banner** page lets you enable the banner and select or create the message it displays. The message may contain up to 1500 characters.

The following table describes the fields on the **Login Banner** page.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enable login banner</td>
<td>Enables the display of a login banner. If this box is unchecked, the <strong>Message</strong> field is disabled. The existing contents, if any, remain unchanged, but aren't displayed to users.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message</td>
<td>Select one of the messages from the list, or select <strong>Custom</strong> and type or paste your own message into the field below.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If you select one of the built-in samples, it's copied into the <strong>Message</strong> field, and you can then edit the copy. When you do so, the system resets the list to <strong>Custom</strong>. Your edits don't affect the stored sample. You can revert to the original version of the sample by re-selecting it from the list.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also:

- “Management and Security Overview” on page 19
- “Certificate Management” on page 22
- “Certificate Procedures” on page 26
- “Security Configuration” on page 32
- “Session Configuration” on page 36
- “Local Password Requirements” on page 37
- “Local Account Configuration” on page 39
This chapter describes the following Polycom® Distributed Media Application™ (DMA™) 7000 system configuration topics:

- Network
- System Time
- License
- Signaling Configuration
- Logging Configuration
- History Record Retention
- CMA Integration
- System Configuration Procedures

If you’re performing the initial configuration of your Polycom DMA system, study “Polycom® DMA™ System Initial Configuration Summary” on page 11 before you continue.

**Network**

The following table describes the fields on the **Network** page. These values are normally set in the USB Configuration Utility during system installation and rarely need to be changed. See the *Getting Started Guide*.

**Caution**

Changing some network settings (host names, IP addresses, or domains) requires a system restart and terminates all active conferences.

If the system is using a CA-provided identity certificate, changing some network settings (host names or IP addresses) also requires you to update the certificate. (If the system is using a self-signed certificate, an updated one is automatically created.)

You can’t change these network settings while the system is integrated with a Polycom CMA system. You must first terminate the integration, and after the change, rejoin. See “CMA Integration” on page 51.
### Table 4-1  Fields on the Network page

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>System IP type</td>
<td>IP addressing supported (IPv4, IPv6, or both).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System node configuration</td>
<td>Number of nodes (1 or 2) in this cluster.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System split network setting</td>
<td>Specifies whether management and signaling traffic are combined on one network interface or split onto separate interfaces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Node 1</strong></td>
<td>Status, host name, and IP address(es) of the primary node. The IP type and network setting determine which of the IP fields in this section are enabled. Host names may contain only letters, numbers, and internal dashes (hyphens), and may not include a domain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Node 2</strong></td>
<td>Status, host name and IP address(es) of the secondary node. The fields in this section duplicate those in the Node 1 section and are enabled only in two-server configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Shared Management Network Settings</strong></td>
<td>The settings in this section apply to the entire system (both nodes in two-server configuration), whether management and signaling are combined or separate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Virtual host name</td>
<td>Virtual host name and IP address(es) for the system's management (or combined) network interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPv4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPv6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subnet mask</td>
<td>Subnetwork mask.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPv6 prefix length</td>
<td>IPv6 CIDR value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPv4 gateway</td>
<td>IPv4 address of gateway server for the subnetwork.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The name of the management network interface (eth0) is not editable, and it can't be disabled. The eth0 interface corresponds with the GB1 jack on the server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto-negotiation</td>
<td>Turn on <strong>Auto-negotiation</strong> or set <strong>Speed</strong> and <strong>Duplex</strong> manually.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duplex</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show Link Details</td>
<td>Click to see details about link settings and information. This information may be useful to Polycom Global Services when troubleshooting a network issue.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 4-1  Fields on the Network page (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Shared Signaling Network Settings</strong></td>
<td>The settings in this section are enabled only if management and signaling traffic are on separate networks. If so, they apply to the entire system (both nodes in two-server configuration). The settings are the same as those in <strong>Shared Management Network Settings</strong>, except that under Signaling Link, the signaling network interface (eth2) can be disabled. This capability exists for debugging purposes. The eth2 interface corresponds with the GB3 jack on the server. (The eth1 interface, which corresponds with the GB2 jack, is reserved for the private network connection between the two nodes in a two-server cluster.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>General System Network Settings</strong></td>
<td>The settings in this section apply to the entire system and aren’t specific to management or signaling.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DNS search domains</td>
<td>One or more fully qualified domain names, separated by commas or spaces. The system domain you enter below is added automatically, so you need not enter it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DNS 1</td>
<td>IP addresses of up to three domain name servers. We strongly recommend specifying at least one DNS server. A DNS server must be specified in order to connect to the enterprise directory. See “Enterprise Directory” on page 109.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DNS 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DNS 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Domain</td>
<td>Fully qualified domain name for the system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signaling DSCP</td>
<td>The Differentiated Services Code Point value (0 - 63) to put in the DS field of IP packet headers. The DSCP value is used to classify packets for quality of service (QoS) purposes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default IPv6 gateway</td>
<td>The interface to use for accessing the IPv6 gateway, generally eth0. Optionally, the gateway’s address and the interface, specified as: <code>&lt;IPv6_address&gt;%eth0</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default IPv4 gateway</td>
<td>If management and signaling traffic are on separate networks, select which of the two networks’ gateway servers is the default. Your choice depends on your network configuration and routing. Typically, unless all the endpoints, MCUs, and other devices that communicate with the system are on the same subnet, you’d select the signaling network.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Routing Configuration Dialog Box

In the Network page’s action list, the Configure Routing command opens the Routing Configuration dialog box, where you can add or delete network routing rules and view the operating system’s underlying routing configuration.

In a split network configuration, routing rules are necessary for proper routing of network traffic. In a combined network configuration, the operating system’s underlying routing configuration is likely sufficient unless you need a special rule or rules for your particular network. If you aren’t sure, consult the appropriate IT staff or network administrator for your organization.

The following table describes the fields in the Routing Configuration dialog box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field/Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Destination</td>
<td>The destination network mask for this route.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Length</td>
<td>The destination CIDR subnet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface</td>
<td>In split network configuration, select the interface for this route.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Via</td>
<td>IP address of router for this route. Optional, and only needed for non-default routers.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also:

“Network” on page 41
**System Time**

The following table describes the fields on the System Time page. These values are normally set in the USB Configuration Utility during system installation and rarely need to be changed. See the Getting Started Guide.

**Caution**

Changing time settings requires a system restart and terminates all active conferences.

You can’t change the system’s time settings while it’s integrated with a Polycom CMA system. The integration must first be terminated. See “CMA Integration” on page 51.

We strongly recommend specifying NTP servers.

---

**Table 4-3  Fields on the System Time page**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>System time zone</td>
<td>Time zone in which the system is located. We strongly recommend selecting the time zone of a specific geographic location (such as America/Denver), not one of the generic GMT offsets (such as GMT+7). If you really want to use a generic GMT offset, note that they use the Linux/Posix convention of specifying how many hours ahead of or behind local time GMT is. Thus, the generic equivalent of America/Denver (UTC-07:00) is GMT+07, not GMT-07.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto adjust for Daylight Saving Time</td>
<td>Leave this selected to avoid various potential issues. There is no need to turn this off for geographic time zones that don’t implement Daylight Saving Time. The DST adjustment is made only when and where it’s appropriate. If you turn this off, the system converts the specific geographic time zone selected into the corresponding generic GMT offset.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manually set system time</td>
<td>We don’t recommend setting time and date manually.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NTP Servers</td>
<td>Specify up to three time servers for maintaining system time (we recommend three). Enter IP addresses or fully qualified domain names.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
See also:
“Network” on page 41
“License” on page 46
“Signaling Configuration” on page 47
“Logging Configuration” on page 49
“History Record Retention” on page 50
“CMA Integration” on page 51
“System Configuration Procedures” on page 53

License

The Polycom DMA system is licensed for the types and maximum number of MCUs it can use.

The following table describes the fields on the License page.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Active License</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Licensed number of MCUs</td>
<td>The maximum number of MCUs that the Polycom DMA system can use as conferencing resources.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Licensed MCU types</td>
<td>The types of MCUs that the Polycom DMA system can use as conferencing resources.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Activation Keys</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System serial number</td>
<td>The serial number of the specified server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Activation key</td>
<td>The activation key you received from Polycom for this server. The key for each server must be the correct one for that server’s serial number.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Signaling Configuration

On the Signaling Configuration page, you can configure H.323 signaling and SIP signaling.

The following table describes the fields on the Signaling Configuration page.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>H.323 Settings</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable H.323 signaling</td>
<td>Enables the system to receive H.323 calls.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Caution:</strong> Disabling H.323 terminates any existing H.323 calls. When you click Update, the system prompts you to confirm.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H.323 signaling status</td>
<td>Status of signaling module. Ready to receive calls if registered with a gatekeeper, Ready to receive IP-only calls if not.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Register to gatekeeper</td>
<td>Enables the gatekeeper fields below.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> Before selecting this option, you must go to Configuration &gt; User Experience &gt; User Experience Settings and specify a dialing prefix. See “User Experience Settings” on page 100.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Status</td>
<td>Status of gatekeeper registration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary gatekeeper IP address or host name</td>
<td>IP address or host name of gatekeeper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary gatekeeper IP address or host name</td>
<td>IP address or host name of the secondary or backup gatekeeper. Optional. Used only when the primary is not available during startup or when the alternate designated by the primary gatekeeper is not available.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Gatekeeper type

Leaves the default, Polycom, for a Polycom CMA, PathNavigator, or ReadiManager SE200 gatekeeper. Select Other for a Cisco Multimedia Conference Manager (MCM), Tandberg Video Communications Server (VCS), or other gatekeeper.

SIP Settings

Enable SIP signaling

Enables the system to receive Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) calls.

Note: Disabling SIP terminates any existing SIP calls. When you click Update, the system prompts you to confirm.

Unencrypted SIP port

If Security Configuration settings permit unencrypted SIP connections, you can select either TCP or UDP/TCP from the list.

We recommend using the default port number (5060), but you can use any value from 1024 to 65535 that’s not already in use and is different from the TLS port.

TLS port

Specifies the port number the system uses for TLS.

We recommend using the default port number (5061), but you can use any value from 1024 to 65535 that’s not already in use and is different from the UDP/TCP port.

If SIP signaling is enabled, TLS is automatically supported. Unless unencrypted SIP connections are specifically permitted, TLS must be used. See “Security Configuration” on page 32.

See also:

“Network” on page 41
“System Time” on page 45
“License” on page 46
“Logging Configuration” on page 49
“History Record Retention” on page 50
“CMA Integration” on page 51
“System Configuration Procedures” on page 53
Logging Configuration

The following table describes the fields on the Logging Configuration page.

Table 4-6  Fields on the Logging Configuration page

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Logging level</td>
<td>Leave the default, Production, unless advised to change it by Polycom support. Debug is useful for troubleshooting. Verbose debug is not recommended for production systems.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rolling frequency</td>
<td>If rolling the logs daily (the default) produces logs that are too large, shorten the interval.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retention period</td>
<td>The number of days to keep log archives. Consider the impact on disk space before lengthening this.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alert when logs exceed</td>
<td>The percentage of log file capacity used at which the system displays a warning on the dashboard.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also:

“Network” on page 41
“System Time” on page 45
“License” on page 46
“Signaling Configuration” on page 47
“History Record Retention” on page 50
“CMA Integration” on page 51
“System Configuration Procedures” on page 53
The following table describes the fields on the **History Record Retention** page. Only users with the Auditor role can access this page.

**Table 4-7  Fields on the History Record Retention page**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Call history records to retain</td>
<td>The maximum number of call records that the system retains for retrieval on the Call History page (see &quot;Call History Report&quot; on page 189).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conference history records to retain</td>
<td>The maximum number of conference records that the system retains for retrieval on the Conference History page (see &quot;Conference History Report&quot; on page 191).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDR export history records to retain</td>
<td>The maximum number of records of CDR export operations to retain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>History record purge interval (seconds)</td>
<td>How often the system checks the call and conference record levels to see if they exceed the maximums and purges the excess.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also:

- “Network” on page 41
- “System Time” on page 45
- “License” on page 46
- “Signaling Configuration” on page 47
- “Logging Configuration” on page 49
- “CMA Integration” on page 51
- “System Configuration Procedures” on page 53
CMA Integration

Integrating with a Polycom CMA 5000 system provides the Polycom DMA system with site topology information, which is necessary in order to support cascading of conferences (see “Add Conference Template Dialog Box” on page 80).

**Note**

RMX MCUs support cascade links only in H.323. The Polycom DMA system must be configured to support H.323 signaling in order to enable cascading. For conferences with cascading enabled, it selects only MCUs that have H.323 signaling enabled.

If you want to support cascading, but don’t have a Polycom CMA system, you must create site topology information on the Polycom DMA system. See “Site Topology Configuration” on page 127.

The **CMA Integration** page contains the **Join CMA** command, which you use to integrate with your Polycom CMA system. When the system is integrated with a Polycom CMA system, it contains the **Leave CMA** command, which you use to terminate the integration.

**Note**

Your DNS server(s) must be able to resolve the Polycom DMA system’s FQDN to its virtual IP address. See “Add Required DNS Records for the Polycom DMA System” on page 12.

In addition, the DNS server(s) must be able to resolve Polycom CMA system’s FQDN to its IP address. This is necessary even if you specify the Polycom CMA system’s IP address when you join it.

When integrated, in addition to the site topology information, the system receives information about the CMA system. That information is displayed in the list on this page.

The following table describes the fields in the list.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Table 4-8 Fields in the CMA Integration list</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Field</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Host name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP Address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Model</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Version</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Join CMA Dialog Box

Lets you integrate the Polycom DMA system with a Polycom CMA system to obtain site topology information. Site topology information is necessary in order to support cascading of conferences (see “Add Conference Template Dialog Box” on page 80).

**Note**

Your DNS server(s) must be able to resolve the Polycom DMA system’s FQDN to its virtual IP address. See “Add Required DNS Records for the Polycom DMA System” on page 12.

In addition, the DNS server(s) must be able to resolve the Polycom CMA system’s FQDN to its IP address. This is necessary even if you specify the Polycom CMA system’s IP address when you join it.

The following table describes the fields in the dialog box.

**Table 4-9  Fields in the Join CMA dialog box**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Host name or IP address</td>
<td>The Polycom CMA system with which to integrate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User name</td>
<td>Administrative user ID with which the Polycom DMA system can log into the Polycom CMA system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>Password for the administrative user ID.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also:

“CMA Integration” on page 51

“System Configuration Procedures” on page 53
System Configuration Procedures

This section describes the following Polycom DMA 7000 system configuration procedures:

- Add Licenses
- Configure Signaling
- Configure Logging
- Configure History Record Retention
- Join or Leave a Polycom CMA System

If you’re performing the initial configuration of your Polycom DMA system, study “Polycom® DMA™ System Initial Configuration Summary” on page 11 before you continue. Other tasks are required that are described elsewhere.

Add Licenses

Adding licenses to your Polycom DMA system is a two-step process:

- Request a software activation key code for each server.
- Enter the activation key codes into the system.

The procedures below describe the process.

To request a software activation key code for each server

1. Log into the Polycom DMA system as an administrator and go to Configuration > System > License.
2. Record the serial number for each Polycom DMA server:
   - Server A: ____________________________
   - Server B: ____________________________ (none for single-server system)
4. If you don’t already have one, register for an account. Then log in.
5. Select Product Activation.
6. In the License Number field, enter the software license number listed on the first (or only) server’s License Certificate (shipped with the product).
7. In the Serial Number field, enter the first (or only) server’s serial number (which you recorded in step 2).
8. Click Generate.
9. When the activation key for the first (or only) server appears, record it:
   - Server A: __________-__________-________-________

Polycom, Inc.
If you have a single-server Polycom DMA system, you’re finished with this procedure. Continue to the next procedure.

If you have a two-server cluster, repeat steps 6–8, this time entering the second license number you received and the second server’s serial number (also recorded in step 2).

**Caution**
An activation key is linked to a specific server’s serial number. For a two-server cluster, you must generate the activation key for each server using that server’s serial number. Licensing will fail if you generate both activation keys from the same server serial number.

12 Click Generate.

13 When the activation key for the second server appears, record it:

   Server B: __________-__________-_________-___________

**To enter license activation key codes**

1 Go to Configuration > System > License.

2 In the Activation key field for the first (or only) server, enter the activation key code that was generated for that server’s serial number.

**Caution**
An activation key is linked to a specific server’s serial number. Each Activation Key field is labeled with a serial number. For a two-server cluster, make sure that the activation key code you enter for each server is the correct one for that server’s serial number.

3 If you have a two-server cluster, in the Activation key field for the second server, enter the activation key code that was generated for that server’s serial number.

4 Click Update.

   A dialog box informs you that the licenses have been updated.

5 Click OK.

See also:

“License” on page 46
Configure Signaling

To configure signaling

1 If you’re going to register with a gatekeeper, do the following:
   a Verify on the gatekeeper that the H.323 prefix you want to use is available.
      If you register with a prefix that’s already in use, you receive no warning that something is wrong, but calls to the system will fail.
   b On the Polycom DMA system, go to Configuration > User Experience > User Experience Settings.
   c Enter the dialing prefix to be used to reach the Polycom DMA system and click Update.
      Users dial this prefix followed by the conference room (virtual meeting room) number. The Polycom DMA system uses this prefix for SIP as well as H.323 so that users dial the same number for a conference regardless of which type of endpoint they’re using. If you enable only SIP, this prefix is optional.

Note
From SIP endpoints, users generally must dial (if a prefix is being used):
   <prefix><VMR number>@<DMA virtual host name or IP>
Depending on local DNS configuration, the host name could be the DMA system’s FQDN or a shorter name that DNS can resolve.
For example, if the DMA system’s virtual host name is dma-virt, the E.164 dial string prefix is 77, and the virtual meeting room number of the conference is 1001, SIP endpoint users dial:
   771001@dma-virt
Depending on the network infrastructure and proxy server(s), it may be possible to use dial rules to enable numeric-only dialing (for instance, 771001) from SIP endpoints. Doing so is beyond the scope of this topic.

2 Go to Configuration > System > Signaling Configuration.

3 To make the system accessible via H.323 calls, select Enable H.323 signaling.

4 To set up H.323 access via a gatekeeper:
   a Select Register to gatekeeper.
   b Enter the IP address or host name for the primary gatekeeper.
   c Enter the IP address or host name for the secondary gatekeeper (optional).
d If registering with a Cisco Multimedia Conference Manager (MCM), Tandberg Video Communications Server (VCS), or other non-Polycom gatekeeper, set Gatekeeper type to Other.

5 To make the system accessible via SIP calls:

a Select Enable SIP signaling.

b If the system’s security settings permit unencrypted SIP connections, optionally select TCP or UDP/TCP from the list.

You must have the Administrator role to change security settings. See “Security Configuration” on page 32.

c Leave the default port numbers (5060 for TCP/UDP, 5061 for TLS) unless you have a good reason for changing them.

Note
The system only answers UDP calls if that transport is enabled. But for communications back to the endpoint (assuming unencrypted connections are permitted), it uses the transport protocol that the endpoint requested.
For more information about this and other aspects of SIP, see RFC 3261.

6 Click Update.

A dialog box informs you that the configuration has been updated.

7 Click OK.

The system processes the configuration and attempts to register with the gatekeeper. The H.323 signaling status and Status fields show the current state.

See also:
“Signaling Configuration” on page 47

Configure Logging

To configure logging
1 Go to Configuration > System > Logging Configuration.

2 Change Rolling frequency and Retention period as desired.

3 If requested to do so by Polycom support, change Logging level.

4 Click Update.

A dialog box informs you that the configuration has been updated.

5 Click OK.
See also:
“Logging Configuration” on page 49

Configure History Record Retention

To configure history record retention
1 Log into the system as a user with the Auditor role and go to Configuration > System > History Record Retention.
2 Specify the number of each type of record to retain.
3 Specify how often you want the system to purge records in excess of those numbers.
4 Click Update.
   A dialog box informs you that the configuration has been updated.
5 Click OK.
See also:
“History Record Retention” on page 50

Join or Leave a Polycom CMA System

Note
Your DNS server(s) must be able to resolve the Polycom DMA system’s FQDN to its virtual IP address. See “Add Required DNS Records for the Polycom DMA System” on page 12.
In addition, the DNS server(s) must be able to resolve the Polycom CMA system’s FQDN to its IP address. This is necessary even if you specify the Polycom CMA system’s IP address when you join it.

To integrate with a Polycom CMA system
1 If this is a two-server cluster, make sure that both servers are running and clustered.
2 Go to Configuration > System > CMA Integration.
3 In the Actions list, select Join CMA.
4 In the Join CMA dialog box, enter the host name or IP address of the Polycom CMA system and the credentials with which to log into it. Then click OK.
When asked to confirm that you want to join, click Yes.
The system connects to the Polycom CMA system, establishes the integration, and obtains site topology data (this may take a few minutes). A dialog box informs you when the process is complete.

On the CMA Integration page, verify the CMA integration information.

Go to Configuration > Site Topology > Sites, and from there to the other site topology pages, to see the site topology information obtained from the Polycom CMA system.

To terminate the integration with a Polycom CMA system

1. If this is a two-server cluster, make sure that both servers are running and clustered.
2. Go to Configuration > System > CMA Integration.
3. In the Actions list, select Leave CMA.
4. When asked to confirm that you want to leave, click Yes.
   The system connects to the Polycom CMA system and terminates the integration. A dialog box informs you when the process is complete.
5. On the CMA Integration page, verify that the system is no longer integrated with the Polycom CMA system.

See also:

“CMA Integration” on page 51
“Join CMA Dialog Box” on page 52
Device Management

This chapter describes the Polycom® Distributed Media Application™ (DMA™) 7000 system’s device management tools and tasks:

- MCUs
- MCU Pools
- MCU Pool Orders

Note
MCU pools were called MCU zones in earlier versions of the Polycom DMA system. The name was changed to avoid confusion with the concept of gatekeeper zones.

MCUs

The MCUs page shows the MCUs, or media servers, known to the Polycom DMA system.

Note
This version of the Polycom DMA system supports the use of Tandberg Codian 4500 series MCUs as part of its conferencing resource pool, but their Media Port Reservation feature is not supported. This feature must be set to Disabled on Tandberg Codian MCUs in order to use them with the Polycom DMA system.

The following table describes the fields in the list (the View Details command lets you see this information in a more readable form for the selected MCU).
The Actions list associated with the MCU list contains the items in the following table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Connection and service status and capabilities:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Connected" /> <img src="image" alt="Disconnected" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Connected securely (encrypted connection)" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="In service" /> <img src="image" alt="Out of service" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Busied out" /> <img src="image" alt="Not licensed" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Supports conference recording" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Doesn’t support conference recording" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Supports shared number dialing IVR service" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Warning" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hover over an icon to see the associated status message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The name of the MCU.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Model</td>
<td>The type of MCU.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Version</td>
<td>The version of software on the MCU.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP Addresses</td>
<td>The IP address for the MCU’s management interface (M) and signaling interface (S).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signaling Type</td>
<td>The type of signaling for which the MCU is configured: H.323, SIP, or both.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ports Reserved</td>
<td>The number of video and voice ports on the MCU that are reserved for the Polycom CMA system and therefore off-limits to the Polycom DMA system. Reserving a portion of an MCU’s capacity for the Polycom CMA system enables that portion to be used for scheduled conferences (where MCU resources are reserved in advance). This feature is available only on RMX v. 6.0 or later MCUs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MCU Pools</td>
<td>The MCU pools in which this MCU is used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Site</td>
<td>The site in which the MCU is located. See “Sites” on page 128.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View Details</td>
<td>Opens the <strong>Device Details</strong> dialog box for the selected MCU.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add</td>
<td>Opens the <strong>Add MCU</strong> dialog box, where you can add an MCU to the pool of devices known to the Polycom DMA system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit</td>
<td>Opens the <strong>Edit MCU</strong> dialog box for the selected MCU, where you can change its information and settings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete</td>
<td>Removes the selected MCU from the pool of devices that are available to the Polycom DMA system as conferencing resources. A dialog box asks you to confirm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Start Using</td>
<td>Enables the Polycom DMA system to start using the selected MCU as a conferencing resource.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stop Using</td>
<td>Stops the Polycom DMA system from using the selected MCU as a conferencing resource. A dialog box asks you to confirm. If you do so, existing calls on the MCU are terminated or (for SIP calls only) migrated to in-service MCUs with available capacity. This command immediately terminates the system’s use of the MCU as a conferencing resource. It has no effect on the MCU itself, which continues to accept any calls from other sources.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Busy Out</td>
<td>Stops the Polycom DMA system from creating new conferences on the selected MCU, but allows its existing conferences to continue and accepts new calls to those conferences. A dialog box asks you to confirm. This gracefully winds down the system’s use of the MCU as a conferencing resource. It has no effect on the MCU itself, which continues to accept any calls from other sources.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Notes

- The system’s licensing determines the type of MCUs allowed and the number of MCUs that can be in service at any time.

  Normally, if there are licenses available, MCUs begin in the in-service state. If there are no available licenses, and you add an MCU, the system warns you that the MCU will start in an out-of-service state.

  The Start Using command is unavailable if there are no available licenses.

  If you add an MCU of a type that isn’t allowed, that media server is placed out of service.

- In the recommended high security mode, the Polycom DMA system uses only HTTPS for the conference control connection to MCUs, and you must configure your MCUs to accept encrypted connections. We recommend doing so. When unencrypted connections are used, the MCU login name and password are sent unencrypted over the network.

- The Polycom DMA system knows only what resources an MCU has currently available. It can’t know what’s been scheduled for future use.

  To use the same RMX MCU (RMX v6.0 and above) for both reservationless and scheduled conferences, determine how many ports you want to set aside for scheduled conferences and designate those as Ports reserved for CMA system so that the Polycom DMA system won’t use them. This feature is not available for Tandberg Codian MCUs.

- The Automatic Password Generation feature, introduced in RMX version 7.0.2, is not compatible with the Polycom DMA system. On Polycom RMX MCUs to be used with the Polycom DMA system, disable this feature by setting the system flags NUMERIC_CONF_PASS_DEFAULT_LEN and NUMERIC_CHAIR_PASS_DEFAULT_LEN both to 0 (zero).

See also:

“Add MCU Dialog Box” on page 62
“Edit MCU Dialog Box” on page 63
“MCU Procedures” on page 64
“MCU Pools” on page 67
“MCU Pool Orders” on page 70

Add MCU Dialog Box

Lets you add an MCU to the pool of devices available to the Polycom DMA system. The following table describes the fields in the dialog box.
MCUs Device Management

See also:
“MCUs” on page 59
“MCU Procedures” on page 64

Table 5-3  Add MCU dialog box

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Host name of the MCU.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Management IP</td>
<td>IP address for logging into the MCU (to use it as a conferencing resource).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Admin ID</td>
<td>Administrative user ID with which the Polycom DMA system can log into the MCU.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>Password for the administrative user ID.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video ports reserved for CMA system</td>
<td>The number of video ports on this MCU that are off-limits to the Polycom DMA system. Set this to the number of ports you want to reserve for scheduled conferences (requires RMX v6.0 or later).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voice ports reserved for CMA system</td>
<td>The number of voice ports on this MCU that are off-limits to the Polycom DMA system. Set this to the number of ports you want to reserve for scheduled conferences (requires RMX v6.0 or later).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Lists the types of MCU for which the system is licensed. Must be set to the correct MCU type in order for the DMA system to be able to connect to it.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note
This version of the Polycom DMA system supports the use of Tandberg Codian 4500 series MCUs as part of its conferencing resource pool, but their Media Port Reservation feature is not supported. This feature must be set to Disabled on Tandberg Codian MCUs in order to use them with the Polycom DMA system.

Edit MCU Dialog Box

Lets you edit an MCU. If you intend to edit the login information for the MCU (Management IP, Admin ID, or Password), you must first stop using the MCU (terminating existing calls and conferences) or busy it out and wait for existing calls and conferences to end.

The following table describes the fields in the dialog box.
To view information about an MCU

1. Go to **Configuration > MCU > MCUs**.
   
The **MCUs** list appears.

2. In the list, select the MCU and in the **Actions** list, click **View Details**.
   
The **Device Details** dialog box appears, displaying detailed information about the MCU.

---

**Table 5-4  Edit MCU dialog box**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Host name of the MCU.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Management IP</td>
<td>IP address for logging into the MCU (to use it as a conferencing resource).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Admin ID</td>
<td>Administrative user ID with which the Polycom DMA system can log into the MCU.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>Password for the administrative user ID.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video ports reserved for CMA system</td>
<td>The number of video ports on this MCU that are off-limits to the Polycom DMA system. Set this to the number of ports you want to reserve for scheduled conferences (requires RMX v6.0 or later).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voice ports reserved for CMA system</td>
<td>The number of voice ports on this MCU that are off-limits to the Polycom DMA system. Set this to the number of ports you want to reserve for scheduled conferences (requires RMX v6.0 or later).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Lists the types of MCU for which the system is licensed. Must be set to the correct MCU type in order for the DMA system to be able to connect to it.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also:

“MCUs” on page 59

“MCU Procedures” on page 64
To add an MCU

1. Go to Configuration > MCU > MCUs.
2. In the Actions list, click Add.
3. In the Add MCU dialog box, complete the editable fields. See “Add MCU Dialog Box” on page 62.
4. To make some of the MCU’s capacity off-limits to the Polycom DMA system, set Video ports reserved for CMA system and Voice ports reserved for CMA system to the values you want to set aside (requires RMX v6.0 and above).

   Use these settings to divide the MCU’s resources between scheduled conferencing (Polycom CMA-controlled) and reservationless conferencing (Polycom DMA-controlled).
5. Click OK.

   The new MCU appears in the MCUs list. If the system has a license available for the MCU, it’s placed into service. Otherwise, it remains out of service.

To edit an MCU

1. On the Dashboard, determine whether there are existing calls and conferences on the MCU you want to edit.
2. Go to Configuration > MCU > MCUs.
3. In the MCUs list, select the MCU of interest. If the MCU is being used as a conferencing resource, do the following:
   a. In the Actions list, select Busy Out. When prompted, confirm.
   b. Wait for any existing calls and conferences to finish.
4. In the Actions list, click Edit.
5. In the Edit MCU dialog box, edit the fields as required. See “Edit MCU Dialog Box” on page 63.
6. To make more or fewer ports off-limits to the Polycom DMA system, change the Video ports reserved for CMA system and Voice ports reserved for CMA system values (requires RMX v6.0 and above).
7. Click OK.

   The changes you made appear in the MCUs list.

To delete an MCU

1. On the Dashboard, verify that there are no calls and conferences on the MCU you want to delete.
2. Go to Configuration > MCU > MCUs.
3 In the **MCUs** list, select the MCU you want to remove from the Polycom DMA system’s pool of available conferencing resources.

4 In the **Actions** list, select **Delete**.

5 When asked to confirm that you want to delete the selected MCU, click **Yes**.

**To stop using an MCU as a conferencing resource immediately**

1 Go to **Configuration > MCU > MCUs**.

2 In the **MCUs** list, select the MCU of interest.

3 In the **Actions** list, select **Stop Using**.

4 When asked to confirm that you want to stop using the MCU, click **Yes**.

   The Polycom DMA system immediately terminates all H.323 calls and conferences that it placed on that MCU (for SIP calls only, it migrates the calls to in-service MCUs with available capacity.

   This has no effect on the MCU itself, which continues to accept any calls to it from other sources.

**To stop using an MCU, but allow existing calls and conferences to continue**

1 Go to **Configuration > MCU > MCUs**.

2 In the **MCUs** list, select the MCU of interest.

3 In the **Actions** list, select **Busy Out**.

4 When asked to confirm that you want to busy out the MCU, click **Yes**.

   The Polycom DMA system stops creating new conferences on that MCU, but it allows its existing conferences to continue and accepts new calls to those conferences.

   This has no effect on the MCU itself, which continues to accept any calls to it from other sources.

**To start using an MCU as a conferencing resource again**

1 Go to **Configuration > MCU > MCUs**.

2 In the **MCUs** list, select the out-of-service MCU of interest.

3 In the **Actions** list, select **Start Using**.

See also:

   “**MCUs**” on page 59

   “**Add MCU Dialog Box**” on page 62

   “**Edit MCU Dialog Box**” on page 63
MCU Pools

The **MCU Pools** list shows the MCU pools, or logical groupings of media servers, that are defined in the Polycom DMA system. A pool may group MCUs based on location, capability, or some other factor.

**Note**

MCU pools were called MCU zones in earlier versions of the Polycom DMA system. The name was changed to avoid confusion with the concept of gatekeeper zones.

Enterprise groups can be associated with an MCU pool order, which specifies the order of preference in which MCU pools are used. This lets you, for instance, ensure that all users in a specific domain are preferentially routed to conferencing resources in their geographic location.

The following table describes the fields in the list.

**Table 5-5  Information in the MCU Pools list**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Name of the MCU pool.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Description of the pool, such as the geographic location of the MCUs it contains.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MCUs</td>
<td>The MCUs that are in the pool.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The **Actions** list associated with the **MCU Pools** list contains the items in the following table.

**Table 5-6  MCU Pools commands**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Add</td>
<td>Opens the <strong>Add MCU Pool</strong> dialog box, where you can define a new pool.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit</td>
<td>Opens the <strong>Edit MCU Pool</strong> dialog box for the selected pool, where you can change its name, description, and the MCUs it includes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete</td>
<td>Removes the selected MCU pool from the list of pools that are available. A dialog box informs you of the effect on pool orders and asks you to confirm.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also:

“**Add MCU Pool Dialog Box**” on page 68

“**Edit MCU Pool Dialog Box**” on page 68

“**MCU Pool Procedures**” on page 69
Add MCU Pool Dialog Box

Lets you define a new MCU pool in the DMA system. The following table describes the fields in the dialog box.

Table 5-7  Add MCU Pool dialog box

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Name of the MCU pool.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Description of the pool. This should be something meaningful, such as the geographic location of the MCUs that the pool contains.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Available MCUs</td>
<td>Lists the MCUs available to the Polycom DMA system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selected MCUs</td>
<td>Lists the MCUs included in the pool. The arrow buttons move MCUs from one list to the other.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also:

“MCU Pools” on page 67
“MCU Pool Procedures” on page 69

Edit MCU Pool Dialog Box

 Lets you edit an MCU pool. The following table describes the fields in the dialog box.

Table 5-8  Edit MCU Pool dialog box

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Name of the MCU pool.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Brief description of the pool. This should be something meaningful, such as the geographic location of the MCUs that the pool contains.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Available MCUs</td>
<td>Lists the MCUs available to the Polycom DMA system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selected MCUs</td>
<td>Lists the MCUs included in the pool. The arrow buttons move MCUs from one list to the other.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also:

“MCU Pools” on page 67
“MCU Pool Procedures” on page 69
**MCU Pool Procedures**

**To view the MCU Pools list**

>> Go to Configuration > MCU > MCU Pools.

   The MCU Pools list appears.

**To add an MCU Pool**

1. Go to Configuration > MCU > MCU Pools.
2. In the Actions list, click Add.
3. In the Add MCU Pool dialog box, complete the editable fields. All are required. See “Add MCU Pool Dialog Box” on page 68.
4. Click OK.

   The new MCU pool appears in the MCU Pools list. The MCUs included in the pool are displayed.

**To edit an MCU Pool**

1. Go to Configuration > MCU > MCU Pools.
2. In the MCU Pools list, select the pool, and in the Actions list, click Edit.
3. In the Edit MCU Pool dialog box, edit the fields as required. See “Edit MCU Pool Dialog Box” on page 68.
4. Click OK.

   The changes you made appear in the MCU Pools list.

**To delete an MCU Pool**

1. Go to Configuration > MCU > MCU Pools.
2. In the MCU Pools list, select the MCU pool you want to remove.
3. In the Actions list, select Delete.
   
   If the pool is included in one or more pool orders, the system warns you and provides information about the consequences of deleting it.
4. When asked to confirm that you want to delete the selected MCU pool, click Yes.

See also:

   “MCU Pools” on page 67
   “Add MCU Pool Dialog Box” on page 68
   “Edit MCU Pool Dialog Box” on page 68
MCU Pool Orders

The **MCU Pool Orders** list shows the MCU pool orders that are defined in the Polycom DMA system. A pool order contains one or more MCU pools and specifies the order of preference in which the pools are used.

**Note**

MCU pools were called MCU zones in earlier versions of the Polycom DMA system. The name was changed to avoid confusion with the concept of gatekeeper zones.

Enterprise groups can be associated with an MCU pool order. This lets you, for instance, ensure that all users in a specific domain are preferentially routed to conferencing resources in their geographic location. See “Enterprise Groups Procedures” on page 159.

A custom conference room can also be associated with a pool order. This lets you, for instance, ensure that this conference room is preferentially routed to conferencing resources with certain capabilities. See “Conference Rooms Procedures” on page 154.

The Polycom DMA system chooses an MCU for a user by applying the following rules in order:

1. Select the MCU pool order:
   - Use the pool order directly assigned to the user’s conference room.
   - If none, use the highest priority pool order associated with any group to which the user belongs.
   - If none, use the system default.

2. Select the first MCU pool in the MCU pool order.

3. Select the best MCU in the MCU pool, based on how well their capabilities fulfill the user’s needs in the following respects:
   - MCU has RMX profile required by user’s conference template.
   - MCU has IVR service required by user’s conference template.
   - MCU has recording capability required by user’s conference template.
   If there are multiple MCUs that are equally capable, select the least used.

4. If no MCUs in the selected MCU pool have capacity, select the next MCU pool in the pool order and return to step 3.

5. If no MCUs are available in any of the MCU pools:
   - If fallback is enabled, select the best MCU available to the Polycom DMA system, based on the system’s capability algorithm.
   - If fallback is not enabled, reject the call.

The following table describes the fields in the list.

---

Note: MCU pools were called MCU zones in earlier versions of the Polycom DMA system. The name was changed to avoid confusion with the concept of gatekeeper zones.
The Actions list associated with the MCU Pool Orders list contains the items in the following table.

### Table 5-9 Information in the MCU Pool Orders list

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Priority</td>
<td>Priority ranking of the pool order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Name of the pool order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Brief description of the pool order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MCU Pools</td>
<td>The MCU pools that are in the pool order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fallback</td>
<td>Indicates whether this pool order is set to fall back to any available MCU if there are no available MCUs in its pools.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 5-10 MCU Pool Orders commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Add</td>
<td>Opens the Add MCU Pool Order dialog box, where you can define a new pool order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit</td>
<td>Opens the Edit MCU Pool Order dialog box for the selected pool order, where you can change its name, description, the MCU pools it includes, and their priority order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete</td>
<td>Removes the selected MCU pool order from the list of pool orders that are available. A dialog box asks you to confirm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Move Up</td>
<td>Increases the priority ranking of the selected pool order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Move Down</td>
<td>Decreases the priority ranking of the selected pool order.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also:

“Add MCU Pool Order Dialog Box” on page 71
“Edit MCU Pool Order Dialog Box” on page 72
“MCU Pool Order Procedures” on page 73

### Add MCU Pool Order Dialog Box

Lets you define a new MCU pool order in the DMA system. The following table describes the fields in the dialog box.
Table 5-11  Add MCU Pool Order dialog box

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Name of the MCU pool order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Brief description of the pool order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Available MCU pools</td>
<td>Lists the MCU pools available to the system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selected MCU pools</td>
<td>Lists the pools included in the pool order in their priority order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The left/right arrow buttons move pools in and out of the list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The up/down arrow buttons change the priority rankings of the pools.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fall back to any</td>
<td>Indicates whether this pool order is set to fall back to any available MCU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>available MCU</td>
<td>if there are no available MCUs in its pools.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also:

“MCU Pool Orders” on page 70
“MCU Pool Order Procedures” on page 73

Edit MCU Pool Order Dialog Box

Lets you edit an MCU pool order. The following table describes the fields in the dialog box.

Table 5-12  Edit MCU Pool Order dialog box

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Name of the MCU pool order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Brief description of the pool order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Available MCU pools</td>
<td>Lists the MCU pools available to the Polycom DMA system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selected MCU pools</td>
<td>Lists the pools included in the pool order in their priority order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The left/right arrow buttons move pools from one list to the other.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The up/down arrow buttons change the priority rank of the selected pool.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fall back to any</td>
<td>Indicates whether this pool order is set to fall back to any available MCU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>available MCU</td>
<td>if there are no available MCUs in its pools.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also:

“MCU Pool Orders” on page 70
“MCU Pool Order Procedures” on page 73
MCU Pool Order Procedures

To view the MCU Pool Orders list
> Go to Configuration > MCU > MCU Pool Orders.
   The MCU Pool Orders list appears.

To add an MCU Pool Order
1 Go to Configuration > MCU > MCU Pool Orders.
2 In the Actions list, click Add.
3 In the Add MCU Pool dialog box, complete editable fields. All are mandatory. See “Add MCU Pool Dialog Box” on page 68.
4 Click OK.
   The new MCU pool order appears in the MCU Pool Orders list. The MCU pools included in the pool order are displayed.

To edit an MCU Pool Order
1 Go to Configuration > MCU > MCU Pool Orders.
2 In the MCU Pool Orders list, select the pool order, and in the Actions list, click Edit.
3 In the Edit MCU Pool Order dialog box, edit the fields as required. See “Edit MCU Pool Dialog Box” on page 68.
4 Click OK.
   The changes you made appear in the MCU Pool Orders list.

To delete an MCU Pool Order
1 Go to Configuration > MCU > MCU Pool Orders.
2 In the MCU Pool Orders list, select the pool order, and in the Actions list, select Delete.
3 When asked to confirm that you want to delete the selected MCU, click Yes.

See also:
   “MCU Pool Orders” on page 70
   “Add MCU Pool Order Dialog Box” on page 71
   “Edit MCU Pool Order Dialog Box” on page 72
User Experience

This chapter describes the following Polycom® Distributed Media Application™ (DMA™) 7000 system configuration topics related to users’ conferencing experience:

- Conference Templates
- User Experience Settings
- Calendaring Service
- Shared Number Dialing

Conference Templates

Conference templates are used to create users’ conference rooms, which define a user’s conference experience. A conference template specifies a set of conference properties, such as the line (bit) rate and video display mode.

Note

This version of the Polycom DMA system supports the use of Tandberg Codian 4500 series MCUs, and conference templates can include Codian-specific settings.

Two Types of Templates

You can create a conference template in two ways:

- Specify the individual conference properties directly in the Polycom DMA system, creating a “standalone” template independent of the profiles available on the system’s RMX MCUs.
- Link the template to an RMX profile that exists on some or all of the MCUs.

Either kind of template can also include settings specific to Tandberg Codian MCUs so that it can be used in deployments containing both kinds of MCUs.
Standalone Templates

Standalone templates defined in the Polycom DMA system free you from having to ensure that the exact same RMX profiles exist on all the MCUs. You specify the desired conference properties directly in the template.

When it uses a standalone template for a conference, the system sends the specific properties to the MCU instead of pointing to one of its profiles.

When using a template not linked to an RMX profile, the system doesn’t use the template’s properties to limit its choice of MCU. It selects the least used MCU in the selected MCU pool (see “MCU Pools” on page 67 and “MCU Pool Orders” on page 70). Unsupported properties are ignored or degrade gracefully if necessary. For instance:

- If a conference set to a 4096 kbps line rate is forced to land on an MCU that doesn’t support that value, the line rate falls back to 1920 kbps.
- If a conference with encryption enabled is forced to land on an MCU that doesn’t support encryption, that property is ignored.

To preferentially route conferences to certain MCUs, use MCU pool orders. See “MCU Pools” on page 67 and “MCU Pool Orders” on page 70.

Templates Linked to RMX Profiles

Linking a template to an RMX profile lets you access profile properties that aren’t currently available in a standalone template.

Note
You can also use a template linked to an RMX profile to preferentially route conferences to RMX MCUs that have the profile. But we recommend that you create MCU pools and pool orders for this purpose instead of using profiles. See “MCU Pools” on page 67 and “MCU Pool Orders” on page 70.

When you link a template to a profile, it’s up to you to ensure that the profile exists on the MCUs you want to use with that template and that its settings are the same on all of them.

When it uses a profile-based template, the system first tries to find an MCU that has that profile (but it does so within the MCU pool order rules; see “MCU Pools” on page 67 and “MCU Pool Orders” on page 70). It selects the least used MCU in the pool that has that profile.

If none of the MCUs in the pool have that profile, the system selects the least used MCU in the pool and does one of the following:

- If the system selected a Tandberg Codian MCU, it uses the Codian-specific settings of the specified template.
If the system selected a Polycom RMX MCU, it falls back to its default conference template (see “User Experience Settings” on page 100). If the default template happens to be linked to a profile that this MCU doesn’t have, the system falls back to its built-in conference properties settings.

See also:

“Template Priority” on page 77
“About Conference IVR Services” on page 78
“About Cascading” on page 78
“Conference Templates Procedures” on page 98
“Conference Templates List” on page 80
“User Experience Settings” on page 100

Template Priority

A user (local or enterprise) has one or more conference rooms, and each room may or may not have a specifically assigned template (typically, however, conference rooms use the system’s default template, as specified on the User Experience Settings page).

An enterprise user can be associated with multiple enterprise groups, and each group may or may not have a specifically assigned template.

You can rank the conference templates by priority, so that the system knows which template to use when the user is associated with more than one.

When someone dials into a conference room, the system uses these rules (in order of importance) to determine which template to use for the conference:

1. If the conference room has a specifically assigned template (not the system default) associated with it, use that template.
2. If the user associated with the conference room belongs to one or more enterprise groups that have specifically assigned templates, use the template with the highest priority.
3. Otherwise, use the system default conference template.

See also:

“Two Types of Templates” on page 75
“About Conference IVR Services” on page 78
“About Cascading” on page 78
“Conference Templates Procedures” on page 98
“Conference Templates List” on page 80
“User Experience Settings” on page 100
About Conference IVR Services

One of the conference properties you can optionally specify in a template is the conference IVR service that the RMX MCU should use. For most purposes, you shouldn’t do so. RMX MCUs have two defaults, one for conferences with passcodes and one for conferences without passcodes, and automatically use the right one for each conference.

If you do choose to override the default and specify an IVR service, it’s up to you to make sure that the IVR service you select is appropriate for the users whose conferences will use this template, and that it’s available on the MCUs on which those conferences may take place. See your Polycom RMX documentation for information about conference IVR services. This feature is not supported on Tandberg Codian MCUs.

On the Conference IVR tab of the Add Conference Template and Edit Conference Template dialog boxes, the list contains the names of all the conference IVR services available on the currently connected MCUs. If an IVR service is only available on some of the connected MCUs, its entry shows how many of the MCUs have that IVR service (for instance, 2 of 3).

If a template specifies a conference IVR service, the system will put conferences using that template on the least used RMX MCU that has that conference IVR service. If there are none, it falls back to the default conference IVR service.

See also:

“Two Types of Templates” on page 75
“Template Priority” on page 77
“About Cascading” on page 78
“Conference Templates Procedures” on page 98
“Conference Templates List” on page 80
“User Experience Settings” on page 100

About Cascading

One of the conference features you can optionally enable in a template is cascading, which makes it possible for a conference to span RMX MCUs. Cascading a conference across multiple MCUs can conserve bandwidth and is especially useful when using WAN links. Participants can connect to MCUs that are geographically near them, reducing network traffic between sites to a single link to each MCU.

Cascading does, however, impact the quality of the conference experience.
If you have a Polycom CMA 5000 system in your network, you can enable cascaded conferences with these steps:

1. On the Polycom CMA system, create site topology data defining the sites, site links, and MPLS clouds in your network, and the subnets in each site.
2. On the Polycom DMA system, integrate with the CMA system to obtain its site topology data. See “CMA Integration” on page 51.
3. On the Polycom DMA system, enable cascading in some or all of your conference templates.

If you don't have a Polycom CMA 5000 system, you must define your site topology in the Polycom DMA system instead of importing it. See “Site Topology Configuration” on page 127.

For a conference with cascading enabled, the Polycom DMA system uses the site topology information to route calls to the nearest eligible MCU (based on pools and pool orders) that has available capacity. If that MCU is new to the conference, the DMA system creates the cascade link to the MCU initially chosen to host the conference.

**Note**
Cascading is supported only for RMX MCUs and only in H.323. The Polycom DMA system must be configured to support H.323 signaling in order to enable cascading. For conferences with cascading enabled, the system selects only RMX MCUs that have H.323 signaling enabled.

See also:

- “Two Types of Templates” on page 75
- “Template Priority” on page 77
- “About Conference IVR Services” on page 78
- “Conference Templates Procedures” on page 98
- “Conference Templates List” on page 80
- “User Experience Settings” on page 100
Conference Templates List

The following table describes the fields in the Conference Templates list.

Table 6-1  Information in the Conference Templates list

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Priority</td>
<td>The priority ranking of the template.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The name of the template.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>A description of the template.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Polycom DMA system comes with a Factory Template that has a default set of conference parameters. You can edit that template and create additional templates.

See also:

“Conference Templates” on page 75
“Conference Templates Procedures” on page 98
“Add Conference Template Dialog Box” on page 80
“Edit Conference Template Dialog Box” on page 90
“User Experience Settings” on page 100

Add Conference Template Dialog Box

Lets you add a conference template. The following table describes the fields in the dialog box. The Common Settings section applies to all MCUs. The Tandberg Codian section appears only if the system is licensed to use Tandberg Codian MCUs, and its settings apply only if a Codian MCU is selected for the call. The other sections apply only if an RMX MCU is selected.

Table 6-2  Add Conference Template dialog box

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Common Settings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>A meaningful name for the template (up to 50 characters).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>A brief description of the conference template (up to 50 characters).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Table 6-2**  Add Conference Template dialog box (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>RMX General Settings</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use existing profile</td>
<td>Links this template to the RMX profile selected in the list below. For most purposes, we recommend leaving this box unchecked and specifying conference properties directly. See &quot;Conference Templates&quot; on page 75.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RMX profile name</td>
<td>Identifies the RMX profile to which this template is linked. The list contains the names of all the profiles available on the currently connected MCUs. If a profile is only available on some of the connected MCUs, its entry shows how many of the MCUs have that profile (for instance, 2 of 3). The system will put conferences using this template on the least used RMX MCU that has this profile. If there are none, it selects the least-used MCU and either uses the Codian-specific settings (if it selected a Tandberg Codian MCU) or falls back to the default conference template (if it selected a Polycom RMX MCU).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cascaded conference</td>
<td>Enables conferences using this template to span RMX MCUs. Cascading requires site topology information, which the Polycom DMA system can get from a Polycom CMA gatekeeper (see “CMA Integration” on page 51) or you can create (see “Site Topology Configuration” on page 127). See “About Cascading” on page 78 for more information about enabling cascading of conferences.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Table 6-2  Add Conference Template dialog box (continued)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>RMX General Settings</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use existing profile</td>
<td>Links this template to the RMX profile selected in the list below. For most purposes, we recommend leaving this box unchecked and specifying conference properties directly. See “Conference Templates” on page 75.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RMX profile name</td>
<td>Identifies the RMX profile to which this template is linked. The list contains the names of all the profiles available on the currently connected MCUs. If a profile is only available on some of the connected MCUs, its entry shows how many of the MCUs have that profile (for instance, 2 of 3). The system will put conferences using this template on the least used RMX MCU that has this profile. If there are none, it selects the least-used MCU and either uses the Codian-specific settings (if it selected a Tandberg Codian MCU) or falls back to the default conference template (if it selected a Polycom RMX MCU).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cascaded conference</td>
<td>Enables conferences using this template to span RMX MCUs. Cascading requires site topology information, which the Polycom DMA system can get from a Polycom CMA gatekeeper (see “CMA Integration” on page 51) or you can create (see “Site Topology Configuration” on page 127). See “About Cascading” on page 78 for more information about enabling cascading of conferences.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 6-2  Add Conference Template dialog box (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Video switching (VSW)  | Enables a special conferencing mode that provides HD video while using MCU resources more efficiently. All participants see the current speaker full screen (the current speaker sees the previous speaker).
If this mode is enabled:  
• The minimum line rate available is 768 kbps (except for SD resolution, available only on RMX v7 MCUs with MPM+ or MPMx cards).  
• All endpoints must connect at the same line rate, and those that don’t support the specified line rate are connected in voice-only mode.  
• The video clarity, layout, and skins settings are not available.  
• LPR is automatically turned off, but can be turned back on.  
If this option is off, conferences using this template are in Continuous Presence (CP) mode, in which the MCU selects the best video protocol, resolution, and frame rate for each endpoint according to its capabilities. |
| Resolution             | Available only if Video switching is selected. Offers four H.264 resolution settings:  
• 720p30  
• 1080p30 (available only on RMX MCUs with MPM+ or MPMx cards)  
• SD 30 (available only on RMX v7 MCUs with MPM+ or MPMx cards)  
• 720p60 (available only on RMX v7 MCUs with MPM+ or MPMx cards) |
| Line rate              | The maximum bit rate at which endpoints can connect to conferences using this template.  
If Video switching is selected, the lowest line rate available is 768 kbps (except for SD resolution, available only on RMX v7 MCUs with MPM+ or MPMx cards). |
| Encryption             | Specifies that media encryption should be required for conferences using this template.  
In general, enabling this option prevents unencrypted endpoints from joining a conference. But the effect of this setting depends on the RMX MCU’s licensing and other configuration settings. Consult the Polycom RMX 1500/2000/4000 Administrator’s Guide for detailed information about media encryption. |
### Table 6-2  Add Conference Template dialog box (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LPR</td>
<td>Enables Lost Packet Recovery for conferences using this template. LPR creates additional packets containing recovery information that can be used to reconstruct packets lost during transmission.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| RMX Gathering Settings | Enables the gathering phase feature for conferences using this template.  
| Enable gathering     | Enables only on RMX v. 6.0 or later MCUs. The gathering phase is a time period (configurable on the RMX MCU) at the beginning of a conference, when people are connecting. During this time, a slide is displayed that contains conference information, including a list participants and some information you can specify here.  
| Displayed language  | Language in which the gathering page is displayed.  
| Access number 1     | Optional access numbers to display on the gathering phase slide.  
| Access number 2     |  
| Info1               | Optional free-form text fields to display on the gathering phase slide. Refer to the RMX Administrator’s Guide to see an example of the slide and the location and appearance of these fields.  
| Info2               |  
| Info3               | On a 16:9 endpoint, a maximum of 96 characters can be displayed for each field, and fewer on a 4:3 endpoint.  
| RMX Video Quality   | Offers two video optimizations:  
| Video quality       | • Motion — higher frame rate  
|                     | • Sharpness — higher resolution  
| Max resolution      | The four resolution settings limit the conference to no more than that resolution regardless of the line rate and resolution capabilities of the MCU and endpoints. Auto (the default) imposes no limit. Available only on RMX v7 MCUs.  
| Video clarity       | Enables a video enhancement process that improves clarity, edge sharpness, and contrast on streams with resolutions up to and including SD. Available only on RMX MCUs with MPM+ or MPMx cards. Not available if Video switching is selected.  
| Auto brightness     | Enables automatic balancing of brightness levels to compensate for an endpoint sending a dim image. Available only on RMX v7 MCUs.  

### Content settings

The transmission mode for the Content channel:
- Graphics — lowest bit rate for basic graphics
- High-resolution graphics — higher bit rate for better graphics resolution
- Live video — the Content channel is used for live video

A higher bit rate for the Content channel reduces the bit rate for the People channel.

### Content protocol

Content channel protocol options:
- Use H.264 if available, otherwise use H.263.
- Always use H.263.

### RMX Video Settings

#### Presentation mode

Enables a conference to change to lecture mode when the current speaker speaks for 30 seconds. When another participant starts talking, it returns to the previous video layout.

Not available if Video switching or Same layout is selected, or if Telepresence mode is Yes.

#### Send content to legacy endpoints

Enables endpoints that don’t support H.239 to receive the Content channel over the video (People) channel.

Available only on MCUs with MPM+ and MPMx cards.

Not available if Video switching or Same layout is selected, or if Telepresence mode is Yes.

#### Same layout

Forces the selected layout on all participants. Personal selection of the video layout is disabled.

Not available if Presentation mode or Video switching is selected, or if Telepresence mode is Yes.

#### Lecturer view switching

When in lecture mode, enables the lecturer’s view to automatically switch among participants (if the number exceeds the number of windows in the layout) while the lecturer is talking.

Not available if Same layout is selected or Telepresence mode is Yes.

#### Auto layout

Lets the system select the video layout based on the number of participants in conference. Clear the check box to select a specific layout (below).

Not available if Video switching is selected or Telepresence mode is Yes.

---

### Table 6-2  Add Conference Template dialog box (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Content settings</td>
<td>The transmission mode for the Content channel:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Graphics — lowest bit rate for basic graphics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• High-resolution graphics — higher bit rate for better graphics resolution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Live video — the Content channel is used for live video</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A higher bit rate for the Content channel reduces the bit rate for the People channel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Content protocol</td>
<td>Content channel protocol options:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Use H.264 if available, otherwise use H.263.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Always use H.263.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presentation mode</td>
<td>Enables a conference to change to lecture mode when the current speaker speaks for 30 seconds. When another participant starts talking, it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>returns to the previous video layout.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Not available if Video switching or Same layout is selected, or if Telepresence mode is Yes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Send content to legacy</td>
<td>Enables endpoints that don’t support H.239 to receive the Content channel over the video (People) channel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>endpoints</td>
<td>Available only on MCUs with MPM+ and MPMx cards.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Not available if Video switching or Same layout is selected, or if Telepresence mode is Yes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Same layout</td>
<td>Forces the selected layout on all participants. Personal selection of the video layout is disabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Not available if Presentation mode or Video switching is selected, or if Telepresence mode is Yes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lecturer view switching</td>
<td>When in lecture mode, enables the lecturer’s view to automatically switch among participants (if the number exceeds the number of windows in</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 6-2  Add Conference Template dialog box  (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Layout</td>
<td>With <strong>Auto layout</strong> deselected, this opens the <strong>Select Layout</strong> dialog box, where you can select the number and arrangement of video frames. Once a layout is chosen, a small representation of it appears here. See “Select Layout Dialog Box” on page 98. Not available if <strong>Video switching</strong> is selected.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Telepresence mode         | Support for telepresence conference rooms joining the conference:  
  • Auto (default)  — A conference is automatically put into telepresence mode when a telepresence endpoint (RPX, TPX, or ATX) joins.  
  • Yes  — Telepresence mode is on, regardless of whether a telepresence endpoint is present.  
  • No  — Telepresence mode is off, regardless of whether a telepresence endpoint is present.  
Available only on RMX v. 6.0 or later MCUs that are licensed for telepresence mode. We recommend always using Auto. |
| Telepresence layout mode  | Layout choices for telepresence conferences:  
  • Manual  — Layout is controlled manually by a conference operator using the Multipoint Layout Application (MLA) interface.  
  • Continuous Presence  — Tells the MLA to generate a multipoint view (standard or custom).  
  • Room Switch  — Tells the MLA to use Voice Activated Room Switching (VARS). The speaker’s site is the only one seen by others.  
Not available if **Telepresence mode** is No. See the *Polycom Multipoint Layout Application User Guide* for more information about layouts. |
| RMX Audio Settings        |                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Echo suppression          | Enables the MCU to detect and suppress echo.  
Available only on MCUs with MPM+ or MPMx cards. |
| Keyboard suppression      | Enables the MCU to detect and suppress keyboard noise.  
Available only on MCUs with MPM+ or MPMx cards. |
| Audio clarity             | Improves the voice quality in conference of a PSTN endpoint.  
Available only on RMX v7 MCUs. |
### Table 6-2  Add Conference Template dialog box  (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RMX Skins</td>
<td>Lets you choose the display appearance (skin) for conferences using this template. Not available if <strong>Telepresence mode</strong> is Yes. or <strong>Video switching</strong> is enabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RMX Conference IVR</td>
<td>Links this template to the specific conference IVR service selected in the list below. For most purposes, this option should not be selected. That enables the system to choose one of two defaults, depending on whether callers need to be prompted for passcodes. If you do select this option, be sure the IVR service you select is appropriate for the users who will use this template. See your Polycom RMX documentation for information about conference IVR services.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conference IVR service</td>
<td>The list contains the names of all the conference IVR services available on the currently connected MCUs. If an IVR service is only available on some of the connected MCUs, its entry shows how many of the MCUs have that IVR service (for instance, 2 of 3). The system will put conferences using this template on the least used RMX MCU that has the selected conference IVR service. If there are none, it falls back to the default conference IVR service.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conference requires chairperson</td>
<td>Conferences based on this template don’t start until a chairperson joins (callers arriving earlier are placed on hold) and may end when the last chairperson leaves (depending on the MCU configuration). This option is ignored if the user doesn’t have a chairperson passcode. For enterprise users, chairperson passcodes can come from the enterprise directory. See “Adding Passcodes for Enterprise Users” on page 119. But you can override the enterprise directory value; see “Edit User Dialog Box” on page 147. For local users, you can add or change chairperson passcodes when you create or edit the users. See “Edit User Dialog Box” on page 147.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 6-2  Add Conference Template dialog box  (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>RMX Recording</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Record conference</td>
<td>The conference recording setting for this template:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Disabled — Recording isn’t available for conferences using this template.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Immediately — Recording starts automatically when the conference starts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Upon Request — Recording can be initiated manually by the chairperson or an operator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Conference recording requires a Polycom RSS recording system and an MCU that supports recording.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recording link</td>
<td>Select a specific recording link or the MCU’s default. The list contains the names of all recording links available on the connected MCUs, with the number of MCUs that have the link shown in parentheses. Available only on RMX v7 MCUs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio only</td>
<td>Limits recording to the audio channel of the conference.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indication of recording</td>
<td>Displays a red dot recording indicator in the upper left corner of the video layout. Available only on RMX v7.1 MCUs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tandberg Codian</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Floor and chair control</td>
<td>Specifies how much control conference participants may have:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Do not allow — Participants have no control.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Floor only — A participant may “take the floor.” Everyone sees that participant’s video full-screen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Floor and chair control — A participant may also “take the chair.” The chair can designate whose video everyone sees full-screen. The chair can also disconnect participants.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This setting works only in H.323 conferences and only if H.243 Floor and Chair Control is enabled on the MCU. All endpoints must support H.243 chair control.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic lecture mode</td>
<td>Enables the MCU to put a conference into lecture mode, either immediately or after the speaker has been talking for the selected interval. In lecture mode, the lecturer (speaker) is displayed full-screen to the other participants. The lecturer sees the normal continuous presence view. Available only on Codian v4.1 MCUs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Table 6-2  Add Conference Template dialog box  (continued)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Layout control via FECC/DTMF</td>
<td>Enables participants to change their individual layouts using far end camera control, with without fallback to touchtone commands for endpoints that don’t support FECC. FECC without fallback is available only Codian v4.1 MCUs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Mute in-band DTMF            | Specifies whether the MCU mutes participants’ in-band DTMF (touchtones) so that other participants don’t hear them:  
  • When used for MCU control  
  • Always  
  • Never  
  Available only on Codian v4.1 MCUs. |
| Allow DTMF *6 to mute audio  | Enables conference participants to mute themselves using the *6 touchtone command. Available only on Codian v4.1 MCUs. |
| Content channel video        | Enables the conference to support a second video stream for content. This setting works only if Content Status is enabled on the MCU. |
| Transmitted content resolutions | Specifies the aspect ratio used for the content channel. If **Allow all resolutions** is selected, endpoints with a 16:9 aspect ratio receive that, and others receive 4:3. Available only on Codian v4.1 MCUs. |
| Conference custom layout     | Opens the **Select Layout** dialog box, where you can select the number and arrangement of video frames. Once a layout is chosen, a small representation of it appears here. See “**Select Layout Dialog Box**” on page 98.  |

See also:

  “Conference Templates Procedures” on page 98
  “Conference Templates” on page 75
  “Select Layout Dialog Box” on page 98
  “User Experience Settings” on page 100
Edit Conference Template Dialog Box

Lets you edit a conference template. The following table describes the fields in the dialog box. The **Common Settings** section applies to all MCUs. The **Tandberg Codian** section appears only if the system is licensed to use Tandberg Codian MCUs, and its settings apply only if a Codian MCU is selected for the call. The other sections apply only if an RMX MCU is selected.

**Table 6-3  Edit Conference Template dialog box**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Common Settings</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>A meaningful name for the template (up to 50 characters).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>A brief description of the conference template (up to 50 characters).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>RMX General Settings</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use existing profile</td>
<td>Links this template to the RMX profile selected in the list below. For most purposes, we recommend leaving this box unchecked and specifying conference properties directly. See “Conference Templates” on page 75.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RMX profile name</td>
<td>Identifies the RMX profile to which this template is linked. The list contains the names of all the profiles available on the currently connected MCUs. If a profile is only available on some of the connected MCUs, its entry shows how many of the MCUs have that profile (for instance, 2 of 3). The system will put conferences using this template on the least used RMX MCU that has this profile. If there are none, it selects the least-used MCU and either uses the Codian-specific settings (if it selected a Tandberg Codian MCU) or falls back to the default conference template (if it selected a Polycom RMX MCU).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cascaded conference</td>
<td>Enables conferences using this template to span RMX MCUs. Cascading requires site topology information, which the Polycom DMA system can get from a Polycom CMA gatekeeper (see “CMA Integration” on page 51) or you can create (see “Site Topology Configuration” on page 127). See “About Cascading” on page 78 for more information about enabling cascading of conferences.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Table 6-3  Edit Conference Template dialog box (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Video switching (VSW)  | Enables a special conferencing mode that provides HD video while using MCU resources more efficiently. All participants see the current speaker full screen (the current speaker sees the previous speaker). If this mode is enabled:  
  • The minimum line rate available is 768 kbps (except for SD resolution, available only on RMX v7 MCUs with MPM+ or MPMx cards).  
  • All endpoints must connect at the same line rate, and those that don’t support the specified line rate are connected in voice-only mode.  
  • The video clarity, layout, and skins settings are not available.  
  • LPR is automatically turned off, but can be turned back on.  
  If this option is off, conferences using this template are in Continuous Presence (CP) mode, in which the MCU selects the best video protocol, resolution, and frame rate for each endpoint according to its capabilities. |
| Resolution             | Available only if **Video switching** is selected. Offers four H.264 resolution settings:  
  • 720p30  
  • 1080p30 (available only on RMX MCUs with MPM+ or MPMx cards)  
  • SD 30 (available only on RMX v7 MCUs with MPM+ or MPMx cards)  
  • 720p60 (available only on RMX v7 MCUs with MPM+ or MPMx cards) |
| Line rate              | The maximum bit rate at which endpoints can connect to conferences using this template.  
  If **Video switching** is selected, the lowest line rate available is 768 kbps (except for SD resolution, available only on RMX v7 MCUs with MPM+ or MPMx cards). |
| Encryption             | Specifies that media encryption should be required for conferences using this template.  
  In general, enabling this option prevents unencrypted endpoints from joining a conference. But the effect of this setting depends on the RMX MCU’s licensing and other configuration settings. Consult the *Polycom RMX 1500/2000/4000 Administrator’s Guide* for detailed information about media encryption. |
### Table 6-3  Edit Conference Template dialog box (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LPR</strong></td>
<td>Enables <em>Lost Packet Recovery</em> for conferences using this template. LPR creates additional packets containing recovery information that can be used to reconstruct packets lost during transmission.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>RMX Gathering Settings</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable gathering</td>
<td>Enables the Gathering Phase feature for conferences using this template. Available only on RMX v. 6.0 or later MCUs. The Gathering Phase is a time period (configurable on the RMX MCU) at the beginning of a conference, when people are connecting. During this time, a slide is displayed that contains conference information, including a list participants and some information you can specify here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Displayed language</td>
<td>Language in which the gathering page is displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access number 1</td>
<td>Optional access numbers to display on the Gathering Phase slide.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access number 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Info1</td>
<td>Optional free-form text fields to display on the Gathering Phase slide. Refer to the <em>RMX Administrator’s Guide</em> to see an example of the slide and the location and appearance of these fields.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Info2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Info3</td>
<td>On a 16:9 endpoint, a maximum of 96 characters can be displayed for each field, and fewer on a 4:3 endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>RMX Video Quality</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video quality</td>
<td>Offers two video optimizations:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Motion — higher frame rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Sharpness — higher resolution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max resolution</td>
<td>The four resolution settings limit the conference to no more than that resolution regardless of the line rate and resolution capabilities of the MCU and endpoints. Auto (the default) imposes no limit. Available only on RMX v7 MCUs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video clarity</td>
<td>Enables a video enhancement process that improves clarity, edge sharpness, and contrast on streams with resolutions up to and including SD. Available only on RMX MCUs with MPM+ or MPMx cards. Not available if <em>Video switching</em> is selected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto brightness</td>
<td>Enables automatic balancing of brightness levels to compensate for an endpoint sending a dim image. Available only on RMX v7 MCUs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Content settings
The transmission mode for the Content channel:
- Graphics — lowest bit rate for basic graphics
- High-resolution graphics — higher bit rate for better graphics resolution
- Live video — the Content channel is used for live video

A higher bit rate for the Content channel reduces the bit rate for the People channel.

### Content protocol
Content channel protocol options:
- Use H.264 if available, otherwise use H.263.
- Always use H.263.

### RMX Video Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Presentation mode</td>
<td>Enables a conference to change to lecture mode when the current speaker speaks for 30 seconds. When another participant starts talking, it returns to the previous video layout. Not available if Video switching or Same layout is selected, or if Telepresence mode is Yes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Send content to legacy endpoints</td>
<td>Enables endpoints that don’t support H.239 to receive the Content channel over the video (People) channel. Available only on MCUs with MPM+ and MPMx cards. Not available if Video switching or Same layout is selected, or if Telepresence mode is Yes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Same layout</td>
<td>Forces the selected layout on all participants. Personal selection of the video layout is disabled. Not available if Presentation mode or Video switching is selected, or if Telepresence mode is Yes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lecturer view switching</td>
<td>When in lecture mode, enables the lecturer’s view to automatically switch among participants (if the number exceeds the number of windows in the layout) while the lecturer is talking. Not available if Same layout is selected or Telepresence mode is Yes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto layout</td>
<td>Lets the system select the video layout based on the number of participants in conference. Clear the check box to select a specific layout (below). Not available if Video switching is on or Telepresence mode is Yes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Layout

With **Auto layout** deselected, this opens the **Select Layout** dialog box, where you can select the number and arrangement of video frames. Once a layout is chosen, a small representation of it appears here. See “Select Layout Dialog Box” on page 98.

Not available if **Video switching** is on.

Telepresence mode

Support for telepresence conference rooms joining the conference:
- **Auto** (default) — A conference is automatically put into telepresence mode when a telepresence endpoint (RPX, TPX, or ATX) joins.
- **Yes** — Telepresence mode is on, regardless of whether a telepresence endpoint is present.
- **No** — Telepresence mode is off, regardless of whether a telepresence endpoint is present.

Available only on RMX v. 6.0 or later MCUs that are licensed for telepresence mode. We recommend always using Auto.

Telepresence layout mode

Layout choices for telepresence conferences:
- **Manual** — Layout is controlled manually by a conference operator using the Multipoint Layout Application (MLA) interface.
- **Continuous Presence** — Tells the MLA to generate a multipoint view (standard or custom).
- **Room Switch** — Tells the MLA to use Voice Activated Room Switching (VARS). The speaker’s site is the only one seen by others.

Not available if **Telepresence mode** is No. See the Polycom Multipoint Layout Application User Guide for more information about layouts.

**Table 6-3  Edit Conference Template dialog box (continued)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Layout</td>
<td>With <strong>Auto layout</strong> deselected, this opens the <strong>Select Layout</strong> dialog box, where you can select the number and arrangement of video frames. Once a layout is chosen, a small representation of it appears here. See “Select Layout Dialog Box” on page 98. Not available if <strong>Video switching</strong> is on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Telepresence mode</td>
<td>Support for telepresence conference rooms joining the conference:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- <strong>Auto</strong> (default) — A conference is automatically put into telepresence mode when a telepresence endpoint (RPX, TPX, or ATX) joins.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- <strong>Yes</strong> — Telepresence mode is on, regardless of whether a telepresence endpoint is present.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- <strong>No</strong> — Telepresence mode is off, regardless of whether a telepresence endpoint is present.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Available only on RMX v. 6.0 or later MCUs that are licensed for telepresence mode. We recommend always using Auto.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Telepresence layout mode</td>
<td>Layout choices for telepresence conferences:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- <strong>Manual</strong> — Layout is controlled manually by a conference operator using the Multipoint Layout Application (MLA) interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- <strong>Continuous Presence</strong> — Tells the MLA to generate a multipoint view (standard or custom).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- <strong>Room Switch</strong> — Tells the MLA to use Voice Activated Room Switching (VARS). The speaker’s site is the only one seen by others.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Not available if <strong>Telepresence mode</strong> is No. See the Polycom Multipoint Layout Application User Guide for more information about layouts.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**RMX Audio Settings**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Echo suppression</td>
<td>Enables the MCU to detect and suppress echo. Available only on MCUs with MPM+ or MPMx cards.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Keyboard suppression</td>
<td>Enables the MCU to detect and suppress keyboard noise. Available only on MCUs with MPM+ or MPMx cards.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio clarity</td>
<td>Improves the voice quality in conference of a PSTN endpoint. Available only on RMX v7 MCUs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 6-3  Edit Conference Template dialog box  (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RMX Skins</td>
<td>Lets you choose the display appearance (skin) for conferences using this template. Not available if Telepresence mode is Yes. or Video switching is enabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RMX Conference IVR</td>
<td>Links this template to the specific conference IVR service selected in the list below. For most purposes, this option should not be selected. That enables the system to choose one of two defaults, depending on whether callers need to be prompted for passcodes. If you do select this option, be sure the IVR service you select is appropriate for the users who will use this template. See your Polycom RMX documentation for information about conference IVR services.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conference IVR service</td>
<td>The list contains the names of all the conference IVR services available on the currently connected MCUs. If an IVR service is only available on some of the connected MCUs, its entry shows how many of the MCUs have that IVR service (for instance, 2 of 3). The system will put conferences using this template on the least used RMX MCU that has the selected conference IVR service. If there are none, it falls back to the default conference IVR service.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conference requires chairperson</td>
<td>Conferences based on this template don’t start until a chairperson joins (callers arriving earlier are placed on hold) and may end when the last chairperson leaves (depending on the MCU configuration). This option is ignored if the user doesn’t have a chairperson passcode. For enterprise users, chairperson passcodes can come from the enterprise directory. See “Adding Passcodes for Enterprise Users” on page 119. But you can override the enterprise directory value; see “Edit User Dialog Box” on page 147. For local users, you can add or change chairperson passcodes when you create or edit the users. See “Edit User Dialog Box” on page 147.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 6-3  Edit Conference Template dialog box (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>RMX Recording</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Record conference</td>
<td>The conference recording setting for this template:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Disabled — Recording isn’t available for conferences using this template.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Immediately — Recording starts automatically when the conference starts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Upon Request — Recording can be initiated manually by the chairperson or an operator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Conference recording requires a Polycom RSS recording system and an MCU that supports recording.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recording link</td>
<td>Select a specific recording link or the MCU’s default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The list contains the names of all recording links available on the connected MCUs, with the number of MCUs that have the link shown in parentheses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Available only on RMX v7 MCUs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio only</td>
<td>Limits recording to the audio channel of the conference.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indication of recording</td>
<td>Displays a red dot recording indicator in the upper left corner of the video layout.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Available only on RMX v7.1 MCUs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tandberg Codian</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Floor and chair control</td>
<td>Specifies how much control conference participants may have:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Do not allow — Participants have no control.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Floor only — A participant may “take the floor.” Everyone sees that participant’s video full-screen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Floor and chair control — A participant may also “take the chair.” The chair can designate whose video everyone sees full-screen. The chair can also disconnect participants.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This setting works only in H.323 conferences and only if H.243 Floor and Chair Control is enabled on the MCU. All endpoints must support H.243 chair control.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic lecture mode</td>
<td>Enables the MCU to put a conference into lecture mode, either immediately or after the speaker has been talking for the selected interval. In lecture mode, the lecturer (speaker) is displayed full-screen to the other participants. The lecturer sees the normal continuous presence view.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Available only on Codian v4.1 MCUs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 6-3  Edit Conference Template dialog box  (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Layout control via FECC/DTMF</td>
<td>Enables participants to change their individual layouts using far end camera control, with without fallback to touchtone commands for endpoints that don't support FECC. FECC without fallback is available only Codian v4.1 MCUs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mute in-band DTMF</td>
<td>Specifies whether the MCU mutes participants’ in-band DTMF (touchtones) so that other participants don’t hear them:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• When used for MCU control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Never</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Available only on Codian v4.1 MCUs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow DTMF *6 to mute audio</td>
<td>Enables conference participants to mute themselves using the *6 touchtone command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Available only on Codian v4.1 MCUs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Content channel video</td>
<td>Enables the conference to support a second video stream for content.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This setting works only if Content Status is enabled on the MCU.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmitted content resolutions</td>
<td>Specifies the aspect ratio used for the content channel. If Allow all resolutions is selected, endpoints with a 16:9 aspect ratio receive that, and others receive 4:3. Available only on Codian v4.1 MCUs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conference custom layout</td>
<td>Opens the Select Layout dialog box, where you can select the number and arrangement of video frames. Once a layout is chosen, a small representation of it appears here. See “Select Layout Dialog Box” on page 98.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also:

“Conference Templates Procedures” on page 98
“Conference Templates” on page 75
“Select Layout Dialog Box” on page 98
“User Experience Settings” on page 100
Select Layout Dialog Box

Lets you select a specific video frames layout when you’re adding or editing a conference template.

To select a video frames layout

1. For a Polycom RMX MCU, choose a Frame count value to see the layouts available for that value, and then select the one you want.
2. For a Tandberg Codian MCU, select the layout you want.
3. Click OK.

See also:

“Conference Templates Procedures” on page 98
“Conference Templates” on page 75
“Add Conference Template Dialog Box” on page 80
“Edit Conference Template Dialog Box” on page 90

Conference Templates Procedures

To view the Conference Templates list

>> Go to Configuration > Conference Setup > Conference Templates.

The Conference Templates list appears.

To add a conference template not linked to an RMX profile

1. Go to Configuration > Conference Setup > Conference Templates.
2. In the Actions list, click Add.
3. In the Add Conference Template dialog box, specify all the conference properties for this template:
   a. In Common Settings, enter an appropriate name and description.
   b. To enable conferences using this template to cascade across multiple MCUs, check Cascaded conference in RMX General Settings.
   c. Complete the remaining sections as desired. See “Add Conference Template Dialog Box” on page 80.
4. Click OK.

The new template appears in the Conference Templates list.
To add a conference template linked to an RMX profile

1. Go to Configuration > Conference Setup > Conference Templates.
2. In the Actions list, click Add.
3. In the Add Conference Template dialog box, specify all the conference properties for this template:
   a. In Common Settings, enter an appropriate name and description.
   b. To enable conferences using this template to cascade across multiple MCUs, check Cascaded conference in RMX General Settings.
   c. Check Use existing profile and select the one you want from the RMX profile name list.
      The list contains the profiles available on the RMX MCUs that have been added to the Polycom DMA system.
4. Click OK.
   The new template appears in the Conference Templates list.

To edit a conference template

1. Go to Configuration > Conference Setup > Conference Templates.
2. In the Conference Templates list, select the template of interest, and in the Actions list, click Edit.
3. In the Edit Conference Template dialog box, edit the settings as desired.
   See “Edit Conference Template Dialog Box” on page 90.
4. Click OK.
   The template changes appear in the Conference Templates list.

To change a conference template’s priority

1. Go to Configuration > Conference Setup > Conference Templates.
2. On the Conference Templates list, select the template whose priority you want to change.
3. In the Actions list, select Move Up or Move Down, depending on whether you want to increase or decrease the template’s priority ranking.
   When a user is associated with multiple templates, the system uses the highest priority template. We recommend moving the system default template to the bottom of the list.
4. Repeat until the template has the desired ranking.

To delete a conference template

1. Go to Configuration > Conference Setup > Conference Templates.
2 In the Conference Templates list, select the template you want to delete, and in the Actions list, click Delete.

3 When asked to confirm that you want to delete the selected template, click Yes.

Any conference rooms or enterprise groups that used the template are reset to use the system default template.

See also:

“Conference Templates” on page 75
“Add Conference Template Dialog Box” on page 80
“Edit Conference Template Dialog Box” on page 90

User Experience Settings

The user experience settings define the dialing prefix, default MCU pool order, and default conference properties for the Polycom DMA system. The table below describes them.

**Table 6-4  Fields on the User Experience Settings page**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dialing prefix</td>
<td>E.164 dial string prefix for calling the system. Required if registering with a gatekeeper. See “Signaling Configuration” on page 47. Must be unique among the gatekeeper’s devices and services. On Polycom gatekeepers, if the Simplified Dialing service is enabled and uses a prefix of 9 (the default), you can’t use 90-99. The gatekeeper recognizes the 9 as a known prefix and ignores the second digit. If a prefix is specified, it’s used for SIP calls as well so that the same number can be dialed from both H.323 and SIP endpoints. <strong>Caution:</strong> Changing the dialing prefix terminates any existing H.323 calls. When you click Update, the system prompts you to confirm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default max total participants</td>
<td>Specifies the maximum conference size assigned to a conference room if a larger or smaller maximum size isn’t specified for it. <strong>Automatic</strong> (the default setting) uses the largest conference size supported by the MCU as the default maximum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default conference template template</td>
<td>Default template used by the system. See “Conference Templates” on page 75.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Calendaring Service User Experience

Polycom, Inc. 101

To specify user experience settings
1 Go to Configuration > User Experience > User Experience Settings.
2 On the User Experience Settings page, make the appropriate selections.
3 Click Update.

See also:
“Conference Templates” on page 75
“Calendaring Service” on page 101
“Shared Number Dialing” on page 104

Calendaring Service

On the Calendaring Service page, you can integrate the Polycom DMA system with your Microsoft Exchange server, enabling users who install the Polycom Conferencing Add-in for Microsoft Outlook to set up Polycom Conferencing meetings in Outlook.

Note
Polycom Implementation and Maintenance services provide support for Polycom solution components only. Additional services for supported third-party Unified Communications (UC) environments integrated with Polycom solutions are available from Polycom Global Services, and its certified Partners, to help customers successfully design, deploy, optimize, and manage Polycom visual communication within their third-party UC environments. UC Professional Services for Microsoft Integration is mandatory for Polycom Conferencing for Microsoft Outlook and Microsoft Office Communications Server integrations. Please see http://www.polycom.com/services/professional_services/index.html or contact your local Polycom representative for more information.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Default MCU pool order</td>
<td>Default MCU pool order used by the system. See “MCU Pool Orders” on page 70.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum and maximum generated room ID</td>
<td>Specify the minimum and maximum values for auto-generated room IDs created for custom conference rooms. Values may be up to six digits long, and the minimum must be less than the maximum. The six-digit limit applies only to generated IDs for custom conference rooms.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conference Duration</td>
<td>Default maximum duration of a conference (in hours and minutes) or Unlimited (the maximum in this case depends on the MCU).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 6-4  Fields on the User Experience Settings page (continued)
As with other Outlook meeting requests, the meeting organizer invites attendees and specifies where and when to meet. “Where” in this case is a conference room, or virtual meeting room (VMR), on the Polycom DMA system. The VMR number is generated by the add-in.

The invitees may include conference-room-based Polycom HDX systems as well as users with Polycom HDX personal conferencing endpoints. Polycom HDX systems monitor an Exchange mailbox (either their own or a linked user’s) for Polycom Conferencing meeting invitations.

Invitees with a desktop conferencing client (Microsoft Office Communicator or Polycom CMA Desktop) can join the meeting by clicking a link in the Outlook reminder or calendar. Invitees with a Polycom HDX endpoint can join by clicking a link on the HDX system’s reminder.

The add-in also sends Polycom Conferencing meeting invitations to a Polycom Conferencing user mailbox on the Exchange server. The Polycom DMA system monitors that mailbox and accepts or declines the invitations received.

A meeting invitation is declined if:

- The VMR number is in use by any other conference room (calendared, enterprise, or custom).
- The user sending the invitation isn’t in the Polycom DMA system’s enterprise directory cache.
- The invitation contains invalid or incomplete meeting data (the machine-readable metadata block at the bottom of the invitation labeled “POLYCOM VMR ENCODED TOKEN” and preceded with a warning not to edit).
- The meeting’s duration exceeds the system’s Conference Duration setting (see “User Experience Settings” on page 100).
- The conference or chairperson passcode is not valid (see “Adding Passcodes for Enterprise Users” on page 119).

**Note**

Calendaring is not the same as scheduling. Using the Polycom Conferencing Add-in for Microsoft Outlook to set up a meeting appointment doesn’t reserve video resources, and invitations aren’t declined due to lack of resources.

This version of the Polycom DMA system supports the use of Tandberg Codian 4500 series MCUs as part of its conferencing resource pool. If you use Codian MCUs to host Polycom Conferencing (calendared) meetings, be aware of these limitations:

- Codian MCUs don’t support the Polycom Conferencing Add-in’s recording and streaming options.
- Codian MCUs don’t provide the “gathering phase” that RMX MCUs provide at the beginning of the conference.
- Codian MCUs can’t receive and accept Outlook meeting invitations themselves, and can only be used if a DMA system is part of the Polycom Conferencing for Outlook solution.
The following table describes the fields on the **Calendaring Service** page.

**Table 6-5  Fields on the Calendaring Service page**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enable calendaring service</td>
<td>Enables the calendar integration fields and the <strong>Update</strong> button, which initiates a connection to the Microsoft Exchange server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exchange server address</td>
<td>Fully qualified domain name (FQDN) or IP address of the Exchange server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Domain\user name</td>
<td>The user ID for the Polycom Conferencing infrastructure mailbox on the Exchange server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>The password for the Polycom Conferencing user ID.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accept Exchange notifications from these additional IP addresses</td>
<td>If you have multiple Exchange servers behind a load balancer, specify the IP address of each individual Exchange server.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**To configure the Polycom DMA system to support calendaring**

1. Confirm that the Polycom DMA system has been successfully integrated with your enterprise directory (see “Enterprise Directory Integration” on page 109) and verify the domain.

   Successful calendar integration requires that the Polycom DMA system be integrated with Microsoft Active Directory.

2. Ensure that the DNS server used by the Microsoft Exchange server (usually, the nearest Active Directory domain controller) has an A record for the Polycom DMA system that resolves the system’s FQDN to its virtual IP address.

3. On the Microsoft Exchange server, create the Polycom Conferencing user that the add-in will automatically invite to Polycom Conferencing meetings.

   **Caution**

   Create a dedicated Polycom Conferencing mailbox that’s used **specifically and exclusively** for the purpose of receiving Polycom Conferencing meeting invitations. This is important because the Polycom DMA system will delete all messages from the Inbox when it checks this mailbox for meeting invitations.

   When creating the user ID for the system, be sure to specify the same domain used to integrate with the enterprise directory. Specify the Display Name as you want it to appear in the To field of invitations. We recommend using Polycom Conference (first and last name respectively).

4. Go to **Configuration > Conference Setup > Calendaring Service**.
5 Check **Enable Calendaring Service** and specify the address (host name or IP address) of the Exchange server.

6 Specify the login credentials for the system on the Exchange server.

7 If you have multiple Exchange servers behind a load balancer, under **Accept Exchange notifications from these additional IP addresses**, add the IP address of each individual Exchange server.

8 Click **Update**.
   
   A dialog box informs you that the configuration has been updated.

9 Click **OK**.

10 Install the Polycom Conferencing Add-in for Microsoft Outlook on your PC and create the configuration to be distributed to your users (see the online help for the Add-in). Optionally, customize the invitation template(s).

11 Distribute the Polycom Conferencing Add-in for Microsoft Outlook, its configuration file, and customized templates to your users (see the System Administrator Guide for the Polycom® Conferencing Add-in for Microsoft® Outlook®).

See also:

- “Conference Templates” on page 75
- “User Experience Settings” on page 100
- “Shared Number Dialing” on page 104

### Shared Number Dialing

The shared number dialing feature enables you to publicize a shared number that can be used to reach multiple conferences, or virtual meeting rooms (VMRs). After callers dial the shared number, they’re prompted for the VMR number to which they want to connect.

This feature is analogous to the behavior of entry queues on the Polycom RMX MCU, extending it to the DMA environment where the conference can start on any of the connected MCUs. The call flow works as follows:

1 Callers dial a shared number to reach the Polycom DMA system.

2 The Polycom DMA system recognizes the dialed number as a virtual entry queue (VEQ) number and routes the call to a Polycom RMX MCU configured to provide the entry queue interactive voice response (IVR) experience associated with the VEQ number dialed.

3 The MCU prompts the caller for the VMR number of the destination conference and sends the response back to the Polycom DMA system.
The Polycom DMA system validates the VMR number entered by the caller. If it's valid, the system routes the call to an appropriate MCU for the conference.

If the caller entered an invalid number, the system re-prompts the caller.
The number of retries is configurable.

Shared number dialing requires SIP signaling and is supported only by v7.0.2 or later Polycom RMX MCUs.

You can create up to 60 different VEQs to provide different IVR experiences (for instance, different language prompts or different greetings). You can designate one of the VEQs as the Direct Dial VEQ, and the system will use it for calls dialed without a VEQ or VMR number. For instance, if a call’s dial string includes only the system’s domain name or IP address, the Polycom DMA system uses the Direct Dial VEQ for it.

For each unique VEQ experience, you must create the corresponding RMX entry queue on the MCUs to be used for IVR prompting in this call flow.

**Note**
The entry queues created for shared number dialing must have the **IVR service provider only** setting selected. See your Polycom RMX documentation.

When selecting an MCU to handle IVR for a VEQ, the Polycom DMA system chooses from among those that have the RMX entry queue specified for that VEQ, without regard to MCU pool orders.

As with conference profiles, it’s up to you to ensure that the RMX entry queue is available on the MCUs to be used and that it’s the same on each MCU.

The **Shared Number Dialing** page lists the VEQs available on the system and enables you to add, edit and delete VEQs. The following table describes the fields on the page.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Virtual Entry Queue</td>
<td>The VEQ number, such as 12345, or Direct Dial.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dial-In #</td>
<td>The complete dial string, for this VEQ. For instance, if the system uses the prefix 71, this might be 7112345.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Typically, a description of the IVR experience, such as which language is used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VMR Entry Attempts</td>
<td>The number of times a caller can enter an invalid VMR number before the system rejects the call.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RMX Entry Queue</td>
<td>The name of the RMX entry queue (IVR experience) to be used for callers to this VEQ.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
See also:

“Add Virtual Entry Queue Dialog Box” on page 106
“Add Direct Dial Virtual Entry Queue Dialog Box” on page 107
“Edit Virtual Entry Queue Dialog Box” on page 107
“Edit Direct Dial Virtual Entry Queue Dialog Box” on page 108
“Conference Templates” on page 75
“User Experience Settings” on page 100
“Calendaring Service” on page 101

**Add Virtual Entry Queue Dialog Box**

Lets you add a virtual entry queue (VEQ) to the list of configured VEQs on the **Shared Number Dialing** page. The table below describes the fields in the dialog box.

**Table 6-7  The fields in the Add Virtual Entry Queue dialog box**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Virtual entry queue</td>
<td>The VEQ number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>A meaningful description for this VEQ and its IVR experience, such as which language is used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VMR entry attempts</td>
<td>The number of times a caller can enter an invalid VMR number before the system rejects the call.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RMX entry queue</td>
<td>The RMX entry queue to use for this VEQ. The drop-down list includes all the RMX entry queues available on the MCUs connected to the system, with the number of MCUs that have each entry queue shown in parentheses.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also:

“Shared Number Dialing” on page 104
Add Direct Dial Virtual Entry Queue Dialog Box

Lets you add a direct dial virtual entry queue (VEQ) to the list of configured VEQs on the Shared Number Dialing page. The table below describes the fields in the dialog box.

**Table 6-8**  The fields in the Add Direct Dial Virtual Entry Queue dialog box

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>A meaningful description for this VEQ and its IVR experience, such as Direct Dial - English.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VMR entry attempts</td>
<td>The number of times a caller can enter an invalid VMR number before the system rejects the call.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RMX entry queue</td>
<td>The RMX entry queue to use for this VEQ. The drop-down list includes all the RMX entry queues available on the MCUs connected to the system, with the number of MCUs that have each entry queue shown in parentheses.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also:
“Shared Number Dialing” on page 104

Edit Virtual Entry Queue Dialog Box

Lets you edit the virtual entry queue (VEQ) selected on the Shared Number Dialing page. The table below describes the fields in the dialog box.

**Table 6-9**  The fields in the Edit Virtual Entry Queue dialog box

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Virtual entry queue</td>
<td>The VEQ number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>A meaningful description for this VEQ and its IVR experience, such as which language is used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VMR entry attempts</td>
<td>The number of times a caller can enter an invalid VMR number before the system rejects the call.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RMX entry queue</td>
<td>The RMX entry queue to use for this VEQ. The drop-down list includes all the RMX entry queues available on the MCUs connected to the system, with the number of MCUs that have each entry queue shown in parentheses.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also:
“Shared Number Dialing” on page 104
Edit Direct Dial Virtual Entry Queue Dialog Box

Lets you edit the direct dial virtual entry queue (VEQ). The table below describes the fields in the dialog box.

Table 6-10  The fields in the Edit Direct Dial Virtual Entry Queue dialog box

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>A meaningful description for this VEQ and its IVR experience, such as Direct Dial - English.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VMR entry attempts</td>
<td>The number of times a caller can enter an invalid VMR number before the system rejects the call.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RMX entry queue</td>
<td>The RMX entry queue to use for this VEQ. The drop-down list includes all the RMX entry queues available on the MCUs connected to the system, with the number of MCUs that have each entry queue shown in parentheses.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also:

“Shared Number Dialing” on page 104
Enterprise Directory Integration

This chapter describes the following Polycom® Distributed Media Application™ (DMA™) 7000 system configuration topics related to integrating the system with your enterprise directory:

- Enterprise Directory
- Enterprise Directory Integration Procedure
- Understanding Base DN
- Adding Passcodes for Enterprise Users
- About the System’s Directory Queries

**Note**

Polycom Implementation and Maintenance services provide support for Polycom solution components only. Additional services for supported third-party Unified Communications (UC) environments integrated with Polycom solutions are available from Polycom Global Services, and its certified Partners, to help customers successfully design, deploy, optimize, and manage Polycom visual communication within their third-party UC environments. UC Professional Services for Microsoft Integration is mandatory for Polycom Conferencing for Microsoft Outlook and Microsoft Office Communications Server integrations. Please see http://www.polycom.com/services/professional_services/index.html or contact your local Polycom representative for more information.

**Enterprise Directory**

When you integrate the Polycom DMA system with your enterprise directory, the enterprise users (directory members) become Conferencing Users in the Polycom DMA system, and each is (optionally) assigned a conference room (virtual meeting room, or VMR). The conference room IDs are typically generated from the enterprise users’ phone numbers.

Once integrated with an enterprise directory, the Polycom DMA system reads the directory information daily to update the user and group information in its cache. Between updates, it accesses the directory only to authenticate login passwords.
The following table describes the fields on the Enterprise Directory page.

### Table 7-1 Fields on the Enterprise Directory page

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Connect to the enterprise directory server</td>
<td>Enables the enterprise directory integration fields and the Update button, which initiates a connection to the Microsoft Active Directory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connection Status</td>
<td>The Polycom DMA system node(s) and one or more of the following status icons for each:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Warning" /> – Appears only if an error has occurred. Hover over it to see a description of the problem or problems.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Connected" /> – Shows either connected or not connected. This is real-time status. The system connects to the Active Directory every 5 seconds while this page is displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Encrypted" /> – Appears only if the connection to the directory is encrypted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Status</td>
<td><strong>OK</strong> indicates that the node successfully connected to the enterprise directory. If it didn’t, an error message appears.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If you’re an administrator, this label is a link to the Enterprise Directory Integration Report.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User and group cache</td>
<td>Shows the state of the node’s cache of directory data and when it was last updated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total users/rooms</td>
<td>Number of enterprise users and enterprise conference rooms in the cache. The difference between the two, if any, is the number of conference room errors. <strong>Note:</strong> If you don’t specify a directory attribute for conference room ID generation, the number of rooms is zero.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conference room errors</td>
<td>Number of enterprise users for whom conference rooms couldn’t be generated. If you’re an administrator, this label is a link to the Conference Room Errors Report report. <strong>Note:</strong> If you don’t specify a directory attribute for conference room ID generation, the number of errors equals the number of users.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orphaned users/groups</td>
<td>Number of orphaned users and groups (that is, users and groups that are disabled or no longer in the directory, but for whom the system contains data). If you’re an administrator, this label is a link to the Orphaned Groups and Users Report.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 7-1  Fields on the Enterprise Directory page (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Invalid chairperson / conference passcodes | Number of enterprise users for whom passcodes were generated that aren’t valid.  
If you’re an administrator, this label is a link to the Enterprise Passcode Errors Report.                                                                                           |

**Enterprise Directory Connection**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Auto-discover from FQDN       | If this option is selected, the system uses serverless bind to find the closest global catalog servers. Enter the DNS domain name. We strongly recommend using this option.  
If the system can’t determine the site to which it belongs, it tries to connect to any global catalog server.  
If that fails, it uses the entered DNS domain name as a host name and continues as if the **IP address or host name** option were selected.  
The system’s Network setup must have at least one domain name server specified.  
Check the Enterprise Directory Integration Report to see whether serverless bind succeeded and what the site name is. |
| IP address or host name       | If this option is selected, the system attempts to connect to the Microsoft Active Directory domain controller specified.  
For a single-domain forest, enter the host name or IP address of the domain controller.  
For a multi-domain forest, we don’t recommend using this option. If you must, enter the host name or IP address of a specific global catalog server, not the DNS domain name.  
The Polycom DMA system can only integrate with one forest. A special “Exchange forest” (in which all users are disabled) won’t work because the system doesn’t support conferencing for disabled users. |
Domain\username LDAP service account user ID for system access to the Active Directory. Must be set up in the Active Directory, but should not have Windows login privileges.

**Note:** If you use directory attributes that aren’t replicated across the enterprise via the Global Catalog server mechanism, the system must query each domain for the data. Make sure that this service account can connect to all the LDAP servers in each domain.

The Polycom DMA system initially assigns the Administrator user role to this user (see “User Roles Overview” on page 142), so you can use this account to give administrative access to other enterprise user accounts.

**Caution:** Leaving a user role assigned to this account represents a **serious security risk**. For best security, remove the Administrator user role so that it can’t be used for logging into the Polycom DMA system management interface.

**Password**

Login password for service account user ID.

**User LDAP filter**

Specifies which user accounts to include (an underlying, non-editable filter excludes all non-user objects in the directory). The default expression includes all users that don’t have a status of disabled in the directory.

Don’t edit this expression unless you understand LDAP filter syntax. See RFC 2254 for syntax information.

**Base DN**

Can be used to restrict the Polycom DMA system to work with a subset of the Active Directory (such as one tree of multiple trees, a subtree, or a domain). Leave the default setting, All Domains, initially. See “Understanding Base DN” on page 117.

**Time of day to refresh cache**

Time at which the Polycom DMA system should log into the directory server(s) and get updates.

**Enterprise Conference Room ID Generation**

**Directory attribute**

The name of the Active Directory attribute from which the Polycom DMA system should derive conference room IDs (virtual meeting room numbers). Generally, organizations use a phone number field for this.

The attribute must be in the Active Directory schema and preferably should be replicated across the enterprise via the Global Catalog server mechanism. But if the attribute isn’t in the Global Catalog, the system queries each domain controller for the data.

Leave this field blank if you don’t want the system to create conference rooms for the enterprise users.

---

**Table 7-1** Fields on the Enterprise Directory page (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Domain\username</td>
<td>LDAP service account user ID for system access to the Active Directory. Must be set up in the Active Directory, but should not have Windows login privileges.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note:</strong></td>
<td>If you use directory attributes that aren’t replicated across the enterprise via the Global Catalog server mechanism, the system must query each domain for the data. Make sure that this service account can connect to all the LDAP servers in each domain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Polycom DMA system initially assigns the Administrator user role to this user (see “User Roles Overview” on page 142), so you can use this account to give administrative access to other enterprise user accounts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Caution:</strong></td>
<td>Leaving a user role assigned to this account represents a <strong>serious security risk</strong>. For best security, remove the Administrator user role so that it can’t be used for logging into the Polycom DMA system management interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>Login password for service account user ID.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User LDAP filter</td>
<td>Specifies which user accounts to include (an underlying, non-editable filter excludes all non-user objects in the directory). The default expression includes all users that don’t have a status of disabled in the directory. Don’t edit this expression unless you understand LDAP filter syntax. See RFC 2254 for syntax information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base DN</td>
<td>Can be used to restrict the Polycom DMA system to work with a subset of the Active Directory (such as one tree of multiple trees, a subtree, or a domain). Leave the default setting, All Domains, initially. See “Understanding Base DN” on page 117.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time of day to refresh cache</td>
<td>Time at which the Polycom DMA system should log into the directory server(s) and get updates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Directory attribute</td>
<td>The name of the Active Directory attribute from which the Polycom DMA system should derive conference room IDs (virtual meeting room numbers). Generally, organizations use a phone number field for this. The attribute must be in the Active Directory schema and preferably should be replicated across the enterprise via the Global Catalog server mechanism. But if the attribute isn’t in the Global Catalog, the system queries each domain controller for the data. Leave this field blank if you don’t want the system to create conference rooms for the enterprise users.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Enterprise Directory Integration

**Table 7-1  Fields on the Enterprise Directory page (continued)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Characters to remove</td>
<td>Characters that might need to be stripped from a phone number field’s value to ensure a numeric conference room ID.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The default string includes \t, which represents the tab character. Use \ to remove backslash characters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum characters used</td>
<td>Desired length of conference room IDs. The Polycom DMA system strips excess characters from the beginning, not the end.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If you specify 7, the room IDs will contain the last 7 valid characters from the directory attribute being used.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Enterprise Chairperson and Conference Passcode Generation

| Chairperson directory attribute   | The name of the Active Directory attribute that contains the chairperson passcodes. In choosing an attribute, remember that passcodes must be numeric. |
|                                    | The attribute must be in the Active Directory schema and preferably should be replicated across the enterprise via the Global Catalog server mechanism. |
|                                    | But if the attribute isn’t in the Global Catalog, the system queries each domain controller for the data.                                |
|                                    | Leave this field blank if you don’t want the system to create chairperson passcodes for the enterprise users.                        |
| Maximum characters used            | Desired length of chairperson passcodes. The Polycom DMA system strips excess characters from the beginning, not the end.             |
|                                    | If you specify 7, the passcodes will contain the last 7 numeric characters from the directory attribute being used.                 |
| Conference directory attribute     | The name of the Active Directory attribute that contains the conference passcodes. In choosing an attribute, remember that passcodes must be numeric. |
|                                    | The attribute must be in the Active Directory schema and preferably should be replicated across the enterprise via the Global Catalog server mechanism. |
|                                    | But if the attribute isn’t in the Global Catalog, the system queries each domain controller for the data.                        |
|                                    | Leave this field blank if you don’t want the system to create conference passcodes for the enterprise users.                      |
| Maximum characters used            | Desired length of conference passcodes. The Polycom DMA system strips excess characters from the beginning, not the end.             |
|                                    | If you specify 7, the passcodes will contain the last 7 numeric characters from the directory attribute being used.                 |
Before performing the procedure below, read “Set Up Security” on page 13 and “Connect to an Enterprise Directory” on page 15. You should also have a good idea of how many enterprise users you expect the system to retrieve.

To connect to an enterprise directory

1. In Windows Server, add the service account (read-only user account) that the Polycom DMA system will use to read the enterprise directory. Configure this account as follows:
   - User can’t change password.
   - Password never expires.
   - User can only access services on the domain controllers and cannot log in anywhere.

   **Note**
   If you use directory attributes that aren’t replicated across the enterprise via the Global Catalog server mechanism, the system must query each domain for the data. Make sure that this service account can connect to all the LDAP servers in each domain.

2. In the Polycom DMA system, replace the default local administrative user with your own user account that has the same user roles. See “Users Procedures” on page 152.

3. Log into the Polycom DMA system as the local user you created in step 2 and go to **Configuration > System > Enterprise Directory**.

4. Check **Connect to the enterprise directory server** and complete the information in the **Enterprise Directory Connection** section.
a. Unless you have a single domain environment and no global catalog, select **Auto-discover from FQDN** and enter the DNS domain name.

**Note**
We don’t recommend using the **IP address or host name** option in a multi-domain environment. If you must, enter the host name or IP address of a specific global catalog server, not the DNS domain name.

b. For **Domain\user name**, enter the domain and user ID of the account you created in step 1.

c. Leave **Base DN** set to the default, **All Domains**. Don’t edit the **User LDAP filter** expression unless you understand LDAP filter syntax (see RFC 2254) and know what changes to make.

d. Specify the time each day that you want the Polycom DMA system to check the enterprise directory for changes.

5. To generate conference room IDs for the enterprise users, complete the **Enterprise Conference Room ID Generation** section.

Skip this step if you don’t want the system to create conference rooms (virtual meeting rooms) for the enterprise users.

a. Specify the directory attribute from which to generate room IDs.

Your users will be happier if room IDs are numeric and not longer than necessary to ensure uniqueness. Phone numbers are the most likely choice, or maybe employee ID numbers.

b. If necessary, edit the contents of the **Characters to remove** field.

If you use phone numbers, the default contents of this field should work to ensure a numeric room ID.

c. Specify the number of characters to use.

After the system strips out characters to remove, it removes characters in excess of this number from the beginning of the string.

**Note**
Leave the **Enterprise Chairperson and Conference Passcode Generation** section alone for now. Once the system is integrated successfully, if you want to add passcode support, see “Adding Passcodes for Enterprise Users” on page 119.

6. Click **Update**.

After a short time, the system confirms that enterprise directory configuration has been updated.

7. Note the time. Click **OK**.
To restrict the Polycom DMA system to work with a subset of the Active Directory (such as one tree of multiple trees, a subtree, or a domain), repeat steps 4-6, selecting the value you want from those now available in the Base DN list. See “Understanding Base DN” on page 117.

Check the Total users/rooms and Conference room errors values. If the numbers are significantly different from what you expected, you’ll need to investigate after you complete the next step (you must be logged in as an enterprise user to investigate further).

Set up your enterprise account and secure the service account:

- Log out and log back in using the service account you created in step 1. You must be logged in with an enterprise directory user account to see other enterprise users. The service account user ID specified in step 4b lets you do so initially.
- Go to Operations > Users, locate your named enterprise account, and give it Administrator privileges. See “User Roles Overview” on page 142 and “Users Procedures” on page 152.
- Log out and log back in using your named enterprise account.
- Secure the service account by removing all user roles in the Polycom DMA system. See “Edit User Dialog Box” on page 147.

**Caution**

Leaving user roles assigned to the service account represents a serious security risk. For best security, remove all user roles so that it can’t be used for logging into the Polycom DMA system management interface.

If, in step 9, the Total users/rooms values were significantly different from what you expected, try to determine the reason and fix it:

- Go to Operations > Users and perform some searches to determine which enterprise users are available and which aren’t.
- If there are many missing or incorrect users, consider whether changes to the LDAP filter can correct the problem or if there is an issue with the directory integration configuration chosen.

**Note**

If you’re not familiar with LDAP filter syntax (as defined in RFC 2254) and knowledgeable about enterprise directories in general and your specific implementation in particular, please consult with someone who is.

If, in step 9, there were many conference room errors, try to determine the reason and fix it:

- Go to Reports > Conference Room Errors and verify that the time on the report is after the time when you last completed step 4.
b Review the list of duplicate and invalid conference room IDs. Consider whether using a different directory attribute, increasing the conference room ID length, or editing the characters to remove will resolve the majority of problems.

If there are only a few problems, they can generally be resolved by correcting invalid enterprise directory entries.

13 If necessary, repeat steps 4-9 and steps 11 and/or 12, modifying the integration parameters as needed, until you get a satisfactory result.

See also:

“Enterprise Directory” on page 109
“Understanding Base DN” on page 117
“About the System’s Directory Queries” on page 121
“Enterprise Directory Integration Report” on page 196
“Conference Room Errors Report” on page 200
“Groups” on page 156
“Enterprise Groups Procedures” on page 159

Understanding Base DN

The Base DN field is where you can specify the distinguished name (DN) of a subset of the Active Directory hierarchy (a domain, subset of domains, or organizational unit) to which you want to restrict the Polycom DMA system. It acts like a filter.

The diagram below illustrates how choosing different Base DN values affects which parts of a forest are included in the directory integration.
The **Base DN** field defaults to *All Domains* (which is equivalent to specifying an empty base DN in a query). Initially, the only other option is to enter a custom DN value. The first time you tell the system to connect to the enterprise directory server, leave **Base DN** set to *All Domains*.

After the system has successfully connected to the Active Directory, the list contains entries for each domain in the AD forest. If you want to restrict the system to a subset of the Active Directory (such as one tree of multiple trees, a subtree, a domain, or an organizational unit), select the corresponding base DN entry from the list.

See also:

"Enterprise Directory" on page 109
Adding Passcodes for Enterprise Users

Polycom RMX MCUs provide two optional security features for conferences, which the Polycom DMA system fully supports:

- **Conference Passcode** — A numeric passcode that callers must enter in order to join the conference.

- **Chairperson Passcode** — A numeric passcode that callers can enter to identify themselves as conference chairpersons. Chairpersons have additional privileges, such as controlling recording. A conference can be configured to not start until a chairperson joins and to end when the last chairperson leaves (see “Add Conference Template Dialog Box” on page 80).

**Note:**

If Tandberg Codian MCUs are included in the Polycom DMA system’s pool of conferencing resources, don’t assign a chairperson passcode without also assigning a conference passcode. If a conference with only one passcode (either chairperson or conference) lands on a Codian MCU, all callers to the conference must enter that passcode.

If the Polycom DMA system is integrated with your enterprise directory, conference and chairperson passcodes for enterprise users can be maintained in the enterprise directory.

You must determine which directory attributes to use for the purpose and provide a process for provisioning users with those passcodes. If a user’s passcode directory attribute (either conference or chairperson) is left empty, the user’s conferences won’t require that passcode.

Passcodes must consist of numeric characters only (the digits 0-9). You can specify the maximum length for each passcode type (up to 16 digits). A user’s conference and chairperson passcodes can’t be the same.

When you generate passcodes for enterprise users, the Polycom DMA system retrieves the values in the designated directory attributes and removes any non-numeric characters from them. If the resulting numeric passcode is longer than the maximum for that passcode type, it strips the excess characters from the beginning of the string.
To generate chairperson and conference passcodes for enterprise users

1  In the enterprise directory, select an unused attribute to be used for each of the passcodes.

   In a multi-domain forest, it’s best to choose attributes that are replicated across the enterprise via the Global Catalog server mechanism. But if the attributes you select aren’t available in the Global Catalog, the system can read them directly from each domain.

   **Note**
   You could use an existing attribute that contains numeric data, such as an employee ID. This may not provide much security, but might be sufficient for conference passcodes.

2  In the enterprise directory, either provision users with passcodes or establish a mechanism for letting users create and maintain their own passcodes.

   Consult your enterprise directory administrator for assistance with this.

3  On the Polycom DMA system, go to **Configuration > System > Enterprise Directory**.

4  Complete the **Enterprise Chairperson and Conference Passcode Generation** section.

   a  Specify the directory attribute from which to generate chairperson passcodes and the number of characters to use.

   b  Specify the directory attribute from which to generate conference passcodes and the number of characters to use.

5  Click **Update**.

   After a short time, the system confirms that enterprise directory configuration has been updated.

6  Note the time. Click **OK**.

7  Confirm that passcode generation worked as expected.

   a  Go to **System Management > Reports > Enterprise Passcode Errors** and verify that the time on the report is after the time when you last completed step 6.

   b  Review the number of valid, invalid, and unassigned passcodes.

      If there are only a few problems, they can generally be resolved by correcting invalid enterprise directory entries.
About the System's Directory Queries

The Polycom DMA system uses the following subtree scope LDAP queries. In a standard AD configuration, all these queries use indexes.

- User Search
- Group Search
- Global Group Membership Search
- Attribute Replication Search
- Configurable Attribute Domain Search
- Domain Search
- Service Account Search

The system runs the first three queries every time it creates or updates its cache:

- When you click **Update** on the **Enterprise directory** page
- When the system restarts (if integrated with the enterprise directory)
- At the scheduled daily cache refresh time

The elements in italics are examples. The actual values of these variables depend on your configuration.

**User Search**

This search queries the global catalog. In a standard AD configuration, all the filter attributes and attributes returned are replicated to the global catalog.

- **Base**: `<empty>`
  
  The base variable depends on the **Base DN** setting on the **Enterprise Directory** page. If it’s set to the default, *All Domains*, the base variable is empty, as shown. Otherwise, the base variable is the same as **Base DN**. See “Understanding Base DN” on page 117.

- **Filter**: 
  
  `((&(objectCategory=person)(userAccountControl:1.2.840.113556.1.4.803:=512)(sAMAccountName=*))
  
  !(userAccountControl:1.2.840.113556.1.4.803:=2)))

---

**Note**

Unless users have already been provisioned with passcodes in your enterprise directory or you’re using an existing attribute, most users will probably not have passcodes assigned. Duplicate and invalid passcodes should be your main concern because they could indicate a problem with the type of data in the selected attributes or with the number of characters you elected to use.
The filter variable depends on the **User LDAP filter** setting. See “Enterprise Directory” on page 109.

- **Index used:** `idx_objectCategory:32561:N`

  The search used this index in our testing environment, using a standard AD configuration (no indexes added). Results may be different for a different configuration, especially a different **User LDAP filter** setting.

- **Attributes returned:** `sAMAccountName, userAccountControl, givenName, sn, [telephoneNumber], [chairpasscode], [confpasscode]`

  The three attributes returned variables (in square brackets) are returned only if you specify the corresponding directory attributes (for generating conference room IDs, chairperson passcodes, and conference passcodes, respectively) and if the **Attribute Replication Search** determined that the attributes are replicated to the global catalog.


### Group Search

This search queries the global catalog. In a standard AD configuration, all the filter attributes and attributes returned are replicated to the global catalog.

- **Base:** `<empty>`

  The base variable depends on the **Base DN** setting on the **Enterprise Directory** page. If it’s set to the default, **All Domains**, the base variable is empty, as shown. Otherwise, the base variable is the same as **Base DN**. See “Understanding Base DN” on page 117.

- **Filter:** `(&(objectClass=group)(|(groupType=-2147483640) (groupType=-2147483646)))`

- **Indexes used:** `idx_groupType:6675:N;idx_groupType:11:N`

  The search used these indexes in our testing environment, using a standard AD configuration (no indexes added). Results may be different for a different configuration.

- **Attributes returned:** `cn, description, sAMAccountName, groupType, member`

### Global Group Membership Search

This search queries LDAP.

- **Base:** `DC=dma,DC=eng,DC=local`
The base variable depends on the Base DN setting on the Enterprise Directory page. If it’s set to the default, All Domains, the base variable is the domain DN, as shown by the example. Otherwise, the base variable is the same as Base DN. See “Understanding Base DN” on page 117.

- Filter: (&(objectClass=group)(groupType=-2147483646))
- Index used: idx_groupType:6664:N
  The search used this index in our testing environment, using a standard AD configuration (no indexes added). Results may be different for a different configuration.
- Attributes returned: member

**Attribute Replication Search**

This search queries LDAP.

The system runs this query when it restarts (if already integrated with the enterprise directory) and when you click the Update button on the Enterprise Directory page, but only if one or more of the configurable directory attributes (for generating conference room IDs, chairperson passcodes, and conference passcodes) is specified.

The purpose of this query is simply to determine if those directory attributes are replicated to the global catalog. If they are, the User Search retrieves them. If any of them isn’t, the system uses the Configurable Attribute Domain Search to retrieve the data from each domain controller.

- Base: CN=Schema,CN=Configuration,DC=dma,DC=eng,DC=local
  The base variable depends on the forest root.
- Filter:
  (|(lDAPDisplayName=telephoneNumber)(lDAPDisplayName=chairpersonPasscode)(lDAPDisplayName=confpasscode))
  The filter variables depend on the configurable directory attributes specified in the Enterprise Conference Room ID Generation and Enterprise Chairperson and Conference Passcode Generation sections (any of these that’s empty is omitted from the filter).
- Indexes used: idx_lDAPDisplayName:3:N;idx_lDAPdisplayName:2:N; idx_lDAPDisplayName:1:N
  The search used these indexes in our testing environment, using a standard AD configuration (no indexes added). Results may be different for a different configuration.
- Attributes returned: lDAPdisplayName, isMemberOfPartialAttributeSet
Configurable Attribute Domain Search

This search queries LDAP.

The system runs this query only if the Attribute Replication Search determined that one or more of the configurable directory attributes that it needs to retrieve (for generating conference room IDs, chairperson passcodes, and conference passcodes) isn’t in the global catalog. In that case, it uses this query to retrieve the data from each domain controller.

- **Base:** `DC=dma, DC=eng, DC=local`
  
  The base variable depends on the domain name being queried.

- **Filter:** same as in User Search

- **Index used:** same as in User Search

- **Attributes returned:** `sAMAccountName`, attribute(s) not in global catalog

Domain Search

This search queries LDAP.

The system runs this query only when it restarts (if already integrated with the enterprise directory) and when you click the Update button on the Enterprise Directory page.

- **Base:** `CN=Configuration, DC=dma, DC=eng, DC=local`
  
  The base variable depends on the forest root DN (the distinguished name of the Active Directory forest root domain). See “Enterprise Directory Integration Report” on page 196.

- **Filter:** `(&(objectCategory=crossRef)(systemFlags=3))`

- **Indexes used:** `idx_objectCategory:11:N`
  
  The search used these indexes in our testing environment, using a standard AD configuration (no indexes added). Results may be different for a different configuration.

- **Attributes returned:** `cn`, `dnsRoot`, `nCName`

Service Account Search

This search queries the global catalog. In a standard AD configuration, all the filter attributes and attributes returned are replicated to the global catalog.

The system runs this query only when you click the Update button on the Enterprise Directory page. It validates the service account ID.

- **Base:** `<empty>`
The base variable depends on the **Base DN** setting on the **Enterprise Directory** page. If it’s set to the default, *All Domains*, the base variable is empty, as shown. Otherwise, the base variable is the same as **Base DN**. See “Understanding Base DN” on page 117.

- **Filter:**
  
  ```
  (&(objectCategory=person)(UserAccountControl: 1.2.840.113556.1.4.803:=512)(sAMAccountName=*)(
  !(userAccountControl:1.2.840.113556.1.4.803:=2))
  (sAMAccountName=<userID>))
  ```

  The first filter variable depends on the **User LDAP filter** setting. See “Enterprise Directory” on page 109. The second variable depends on the value entered in the **Service account ID** field on the **Enterprise Directory** page. See “Enterprise Directory” on page 109.

- **Index used:** `idx_objectCategory:32561:N`

  The search used this index in our testing environment, using a standard AD configuration (no indexes added). Results may be different for a different configuration, especially a different **User LDAP filter** setting.

- **Attributes returned:** `sAMAccountName`, `userAccountControl`, `givenName`, `sn`

See also:

“Enterprise Directory” on page 109

“Enterprise Directory Integration Procedure” on page 114

“Understanding Base DN” on page 117
Site Topology Configuration

This chapter describes the following Polycom® Distributed Media Application™ (DMA™) 7000 site topology configuration topics:

- About Site Topology
- Sites
- Site Links
- Site-to-Site Exclusions
- Network Clouds
- Site Topology Configuration Procedures

About Site Topology

Site topology information describes your network and its interfaces to other networks, including the following elements:

- Site — A local area network (LAN) that generally corresponds with a geographic location such as an office or plant. A site contains one or more network subnets, so a device’s IP address identifies the site to which it belongs.

- Network cloud — A Multiprotocol Label Switching (MPLS) network cloud defined in the site topology. An MPLS network is a private network that links multiple locations and uses label switching to tag packets with origin, destination, and quality of service (QOS) information.

- Site link — A network connection between two sites or between a site and an MPLS network cloud.

- Site-to-site exclusion — A site-to-site connection that the site topology doesn’t permit a voice or video call to use.

The Polycom DMA system needs site topology information to support cascading of conferences. It can get it in one of two ways:
- If you have a Polycom CMA 5000 system, integrate the Polycom DMA system with it (see “CMA Integration” on page 51) to automatically get its site topology information.

- If you don’t have a Polycom CMA 5000 system, enter site topology information about your network directly into the Polycom DMA system’s site topology pages.

For a conference with cascading enabled, the Polycom DMA system uses the site topology information to route calls to the nearest eligible MCU (based on pools and pool orders) that has available capacity and to create the cascade links between MCUs.

When determining which MCU is “nearest” to a caller and which path is best for a cascade link, the system takes into account the bandwidth availability of alternative paths.

**Note**

Cascading always uses a hub-and-spoke configuration so that each cascaded MCU is only one link away from the “hub” MCU, which hosts the conference. The conference is hosted on the same MCU that would have been chosen in the absence of cascading, using the pool order applicable to the conference. See “MCU Pool Orders” on page 70.

RMX MCUs support cascade links only in H.323, so the bridges and Polycom DMA system must be configured to support H.323 signaling in order to enable cascading.

See also:

- “Sites” on page 128
- “Site Links” on page 133
- “Site-to-Site Exclusions” on page 135
- “Network Clouds” on page 136
- “Site Topology Configuration Procedures” on page 138

---

**Sites**

The **Sites** page contains a list of the sites defined in the site topology.

If the system is integrated with a Polycom CMA system, it receives this information from that system, and this page is read-only. If not, you can enter site information.

The commands in the **Actions** list let you add a site, edit or delete existing sites, and see information about a site.

The following table describes the fields in the list.
Table 8-1 Information in the Sites list

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Name of the site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Description of the site.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also:

“About Site Topology” on page 127
“Site Information Dialog Box” on page 129
“Add Site Dialog Box” on page 130
“Edit Site Dialog Box” on page 130
“Add Subnet Dialog Box” on page 131
“Edit Subnet Dialog Box” on page 132
“Site Topology Configuration Procedures” on page 138

Site Information Dialog Box

Lets you view information about the selected site, including which subnets are associated with it and counts of the devices it contains.

The following table describes the fields in the dialog box, all of which are read-only.

Table 8-2 Site Information dialog box

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Site Info</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Site name</td>
<td>A meaningful name for the site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>A brief description of the site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device Types</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MCUs</td>
<td>The number of MCUs in the site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DMAs</td>
<td>The number of Polycom DMA systems in the site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VBPs</td>
<td>The number of Polycom Video Border Proxy NAT/firewall traversal appliances in the site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endpoints</td>
<td>The number of endpoints in the site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subnets</td>
<td>A list of the subnets in the site.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Add Site Dialog Box

Lets you define a new site in the Polycom DMA system’s site topology and specify which subnets are associated with it. The following table describes the fields in the dialog box.

**Table 8-3  Add Site dialog box**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>General Info</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>General Settings</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Site name</td>
<td>A meaningful name for the site (up to 128 characters).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>A brief description of the site (up to 200 characters).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **Subnets**        |                                                  |
| IP Address        | The IP address that defines the subnet.           |
| Subnet Mask       | The subnet mask for the site.                     |

Edit Site Dialog Box

Lets you edit a site in the Polycom DMA system’s site topology and add or edit a subnet associated with the site. The following table describes the fields in the dialog box.

See also:

“About Site Topology” on page 127
“Sites” on page 128
“Edit Site Dialog Box” on page 130
“Add Subnet Dialog Box” on page 131
“Edit Subnet Dialog Box” on page 132
“Site Topology Configuration Procedures” on page 138
### Add Subnet Dialog Box

Lets you add subnets to the site you’re adding or editing. The following table describes the fields in the dialog box.

#### Table 8-5  Add Subnet dialog box

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IP address</td>
<td>The IP address that defines the subnet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subnet mask</td>
<td>The subnet mask, such as 255.255.255.0.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**

You can assign a subnet to only one site.
See also:

“About Site Topology” on page 127
“Sites” on page 128
“Add Site Dialog Box” on page 130
“Edit Site Dialog Box” on page 130
“Edit Subnet Dialog Box” on page 132
“Site Topology Configuration Procedures” on page 138

**Edit Subnet Dialog Box**

Lets you edit a subnet associated with a site. The following table describes the fields in the dialog box.

**Table 8-6 Edit Subnet dialog box**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IP address</td>
<td>The IP address that defines the subnet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subnet mask</td>
<td>The subnet mask, such as 255.255.255.0.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**

You can assign a subnet to only one site.

See also:

“About Site Topology” on page 127
“Sites” on page 128
“Add Site Dialog Box” on page 130
“Edit Site Dialog Box” on page 130
“Add Subnet Dialog Box” on page 131
“Site Topology Configuration Procedures” on page 138
Site Links

The Site Links page contains a list of the links defined in the site topology. A link can connect two sites, or it can connect a site to an MPLS network cloud (see “Network Clouds” on page 136).

If the system is integrated with a CMA system, it receives this information from that system, and this page is read-only. If not, you can enter link information.

The commands in the Actions list let you add a link and edit or delete existing links.

The following table describes the fields in the list.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Name of the link.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Description of the link.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>From Site</td>
<td>The originating site of the link.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Site</td>
<td>The destination site (or MPLS cloud) of the link.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also:

“About Site Topology” on page 127
“Sites” on page 128
“Add Site Link Dialog Box” on page 133
“Edit Site Link Dialog Box” on page 134
“Site Topology Configuration Procedures” on page 138

Add Site Link Dialog Box

Lets you define a new site link in the Polycom DMA system’s site topology. A link can connect two sites, or it can connect a site to an MPLS network cloud (see “Network Clouds” on page 136).

The following table describes the fields in the dialog box.
Table 8-8  Add Site Link dialog box

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>A meaningful name for the link (up to 128 characters).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>A brief description of the link (up to 200 characters).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>From site</td>
<td>The originating site of the link. Can't be changed for a site-to-cloud link.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To site</td>
<td>The destination site of the link. Can't be changed for a site-to-cloud link.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also:

“About Site Topology” on page 127
“Site Links” on page 133
“Edit Site Link Dialog Box” on page 134
“Site Topology Configuration Procedures” on page 138

Edit Site Link Dialog Box

Lets you edit a site link in the Polycom DMA system’s site topology. A link can connect two sites, or it can connect a site to an MPLS network cloud (see “Network Clouds” on page 136).

The following table describes the fields in the dialog box.

Table 8-9  Edit Site Link dialog box

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>A meaningful name for the link (up to 128 characters).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>A brief description of the link (up to 200 characters).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>From site</td>
<td>The originating site of the link. Can't be changed for a site-to-cloud link.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To site</td>
<td>The destination site of the link. Can't be changed for a site-to-cloud link.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also:

“About Site Topology” on page 127
“Site Links” on page 133
“Add Site Link Dialog Box” on page 133
“Site Topology Configuration Procedures” on page 138
Site-to-Site Exclusions

The Site-to-Site Exclusions page contains a list of the direct site-to-site connections that the site topology doesn’t permit a call or session to use.

If the system is integrated with a CMA system, it receives this information from that system, and this page is read-only. If not, you can define exclusions.

The commands in the Actions list let you add a site-to-site exclusion and delete existing exclusions.

The following table describes the fields in the list.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>From/To Site</td>
<td>Name of one of the two sites connected by the excluded link.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To/From Site</td>
<td>Name of the other site.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also:

“About Site Topology” on page 127
“Sites” on page 128
“Add Site-to-Site Exclusion Wizard” on page 135
“Site Topology Configuration Procedures” on page 138

Add Site-to-Site Exclusion Wizard

Lets you define a new site-to-site exclusion in the Polycom DMA system’s site topology.

To add a site-to-site exclusion

1. Go to Configuration > Site Topology > Site-to-Site Exclusions.
2. In the Actions list, click Add.
3. In Step 1 of the wizard, select the first site for the exclusion. Click Next. If the site you want isn’t displayed in the list, you can search by site name.
4. In Step 2 of the wizard, select the second site for the exclusion. Click Next.
5. In Step 3 of the wizard, review the exclusion and click Done if it’s correct.
Network Clouds

The **Network Clouds** page contains a list of the MPLS (Multiprotocol Label Switching) network clouds defined in the site topology.

If the system is integrated with a CMA system, it receives MPLS network information from that system, and this page is read-only. If not, you can enter MPLS network cloud information.

The commands in the **Actions** list let you add an MPLS cloud and edit or delete existing MPLS clouds.

The following table describes the fields in the list.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column/Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Name of the cloud.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Description of the cloud.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also:

“About Site Topology” on page 127

“Site-to-Site Exclusions” on page 135

“Site Topology Configuration Procedures” on page 138

“Sites” on page 128
Add MPLS Cloud Dialog Box

Lets you define a new MPLS network cloud in the Polycom DMA system’s site topology. The following table describes the fields in the dialog box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cloud Info</td>
<td>A meaningful name for the cloud (up to 128 characters).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>A brief description of the cloud (up to 200 characters).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Linked Sites</td>
<td>Enter search string or leave blank to find all sites.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Search Sites</td>
<td>Lists sites found.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Search Result</td>
<td>Select a site and click the right arrow to open the Add Site Link dialog box (see “Add Site Link Dialog Box” on page 133).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Linked Sites</td>
<td>Lists sites linked to the cloud.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also:

“About Site Topology” on page 127
“Network Clouds” on page 136
“Edit MPLS Cloud Dialog Box” on page 137
“Site Topology Configuration Procedures” on page 138

Edit MPLS Cloud Dialog Box

Lets you edit an MPLS network cloud in the Polycom DMA system’s site topology. The following table describes the fields in the dialog box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cloud Info</td>
<td>A meaningful name for the cloud (up to 128 characters).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>A brief description of the cloud (up to 200 characters).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>A brief description of the cloud (up to 200 characters).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
To configure your site topology

1. Go to **Configuration > Site Topology > Sites**.

   Initially, the list of sites contains only an entry named Internet/VPN, which can’t be edited.

2. For each site in your network topology, do the following:
   a. In the **Actions** list, click **Add**.
   b. In the **Add Site** dialog box, complete the **General Info** section. See “**Add Site Dialog Box**” on page 130.
   c. In the **Subnets** section, specify the subnet or subnets that make up the site. See “**Add Subnet Dialog Box**” on page 131.
   d. Click **OK**.

3. Go to **Configuration > Site Topology > Site Links**, and for each direct link between sites, do the following:
   a. In the **Actions** list, click **Add**.
   b. In the **Add Site Link** dialog box, define the link. See “**Add Site Link Dialog Box**” on page 133.
   c. Click **OK**.

---

**Table 8-13  Edit MPLS Cloud dialog box (continued)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Linked Sites</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Search Sites</td>
<td>Enter search string or leave blank to find all sites.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Search Result</td>
<td>Lists sites found. Select a site and click the right arrow to open the <strong>Add Site Link</strong> dialog box (see “<strong>Add Site Link Dialog Box</strong>” on page 133).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Linked Sites</td>
<td>Lists sites linked to the cloud.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also:

“**About Site Topology**” on page 127
“**Network Clouds**” on page 136
“**Add MPLS Cloud Dialog Box**” on page 137
“**Site Topology Configuration Procedures**” on page 138
4 Go to Configuration > Site Topology > Network Clouds, and for each MPLS network cloud in your network topology, do the following:
   a In the Actions list, click Add.
      The Add MPLS Cloud dialog box appears.
   b In the Cloud Info section, enter a name and description for the cloud.
   c In the Linked Sites section, display the sites you defined. See “Add MPLS Cloud Dialog Box” on page 137.
   d Select the first site linked to this cloud and click the arrow button to move it to the Linked Sites list.
      The Add Site Link dialog box appears.
   e Define the link. See “Add Site Link Dialog Box” on page 133.
   f Repeat the previous two steps for each additional site linked to this cloud.
   g Click OK.

5 Go to Configuration > Site Topology > Site-to-Site Exclusions, and for each exclusion in your network topology, do the following:
   a In the Actions list, click Add.
   b Complete the Add Site-to-Site Exclusions wizard. See “Add Site-to-Site Exclusion Wizard” on page 135.

Your site topology information is complete. For conferences with cascading enabled, the Polycom DMA system can use it to route calls to the nearest eligible MCU (based on pools and pool orders) that has available capacity and to create the cascade links between MCUs.

Note
If in the future, you integrate this system with a Polycom CMA 5000 system, the site topology information from the Polycom CMA system will replace the information you entered.

See also:
   “About Site Topology” on page 127
   “Sites” on page 128
   “Site Links” on page 133
   “Site-to-Site Exclusions” on page 135
   “Network Clouds” on page 136
This chapter describes the following Polycom® Distributed Media Application™ (DMA™) 7000 system management topics related to users and groups:

- User Roles Overview
- Adding Users Overview
- Users
- Add User Dialog Box
- Edit User Dialog Box
- Conference Rooms Dialog Box
- Add Conference Room Dialog Box
- Edit Conference Room Dialog Box
- Users Procedures
- Conference Rooms Procedures
- Groups
- Import Enterprise Groups Dialog Box
- Edit Group Dialog Box
- Enterprise Groups Procedures
User Roles Overview

The Polycom DMA system has four user roles, or classes of users, each with its own set of permissions. Every user account has one or more user roles (but only three of the four roles must be explicitly assigned).

The following table briefly describes the user roles. See “Polycom DMA System Management Interface Access” on page 3 for detailed information on which commands are available to each user role.

Table 9-1  The Polycom DMA system’s user roles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Role</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Administrator</td>
<td>Responsible for the overall administration of the system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Can access all the pages except those reserved for auditors (must be enterprise user to see enterprise reports, enterprise users, and groups).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This role must be explicitly assigned by an Administrator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auditor</td>
<td>Responsible for configuring logging and history record retention, and for managing logs. Can access all history reports.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This role must be explicitly assigned by an Administrator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Provisioner</td>
<td>Responsible for the management of Conferencing User accounts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Can create or modify only users with no role other than Conferencing User, but can view all local users and, if an enterprise user, all enterprise users. Can view history reports.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This role must be explicitly assigned by an Administrator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conferencing User</td>
<td>Can use the system’s ad hoc conferencing features (and typically has been provisioned with a virtual conference room).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cannot access any system management interfaces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This role is automatically present on all user accounts. It isn’t listed under Available Roles or explicitly assigned.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If your system is integrated with an enterprise directory, all enterprise users are automatically Conferencing Users. You can use enterprise groups to manage assignment of the other user roles. See “Enterprise Groups Procedures” on page 159.

Note
You must be an enterprise user (with the appropriate user role assignments) to see and work with enterprise users. A local user can only see other local users, regardless of user roles.
Adding Users Overview

You can add users to the system in two ways:

- Add users manually to the Polycom DMA system. These are known as local users. When adding users manually, you must assign them conference rooms and any specific roles they should have.

- Integrate the Polycom DMA system with an enterprise directory (requires Administrator permissions). This integration allows users with specific roles (Administrator, Auditor, or Provisioner) to log into the Polycom DMA system with their enterprise directory user names and passwords. When a Polycom DMA system is integrated with an enterprise directory, the enterprise directory users are automatically added as Polycom DMA system users with a Conferencing User role and displayed in the Polycom DMA system Users list. An administrator can assign them additional roles as required.

Note
You must be an enterprise user (with the appropriate user role assignments) to see and work with enterprise users. A local user can only see other local users, regardless of user roles.

A newly installed system has a single local user account, admin. We strongly recommend that, as part of initial system setup, you create a local user account for yourself with the Administrator role, log in using that account, and delete the admin user account. See the caution and first procedure in “Users Procedures” on page 152.

You can then create other local user accounts or integrate with an enterprise directory and assign additional roles to the appropriate enterprise users.

Integration with an enterprise directory is described in “Enterprise Directory” on page 109.

See also:
- “Polycom® DMA™ System Initial Configuration Summary” on page 11
- “User Roles Overview” on page 142
- “Users Procedures” on page 152
- “Conference Rooms Procedures” on page 154
The **Users** page provides access to information about both local and enterprise users. From it, you can:

- Add local users.
- Edit both local and enterprise users (for the latter, only roles and conference passcodes can be modified).
- Manage conference rooms (virtual meeting rooms) for both local and enterprise users.

The search pane above the list lets you find users matching the criteria you specify. Click the down arrow on the right to expand the search pane.

The users that match your search criteria are listed below.

The following table describes the parts of the **Users** list.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>User ID</td>
<td>The user’s login name. The icon to the left indicates whether the user’s account is enabled or disabled. Hover over it to see the associated message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First Name</td>
<td>The user’s first name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last Name</td>
<td>The user’s last name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Domain</td>
<td>The domain associated with the user. All users added manually to the system are in the LOCAL domain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conference Rooms</td>
<td>The user’s conference room or rooms (virtual meeting rooms). If the system is integrated with an enterprise directory, and you specified criteria for conference room ID generation, the enterprise users have a default conference room assigned to them automatically. Alternatively or in addition, enterprise users may have custom conference rooms manually assigned to them. Local users must be manually assigned a conference room or rooms.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 9-2  Information in the Users list (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Roles</td>
<td>The user’s explicitly assigned user roles, if any. All users automatically have the Conferencing User role; it's not listed or explicitly assigned (but a conference room ID is required). See “User Roles Overview” on page 142.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chairperson Passcode</td>
<td>The numeric passcode that identifies chairpersons in the user’s conferences. If none, the user’s conferences don’t include the chairperson feature. For enterprise users, passcodes (both kinds) generally come from the enterprise directory. See “Adding Passcodes for Enterprise Users” on page 119. But you can specify an enterprise user’s passcodes locally. See “Edit User Dialog Box” on page 147. For local users, you can add passcodes when you create or edit the users. See “Add User Dialog Box” on page 145.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Conference Passcode   | The numeric passcodes that callers must enter to join the user’s conferences. If none, the user’s conferences don’t require a passcode.  

See also:

- “User Roles Overview” on page 142
- “Adding Users Overview” on page 143
- “Add User Dialog Box” on page 145
- “Edit User Dialog Box” on page 147
- “Users Procedures” on page 152
- “Conference Rooms Procedures” on page 154

### Add User Dialog Box

The following table describes the parts of the Add User dialog box, which lets you add local users to the system.

### Table 9-3  Add User dialog box

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>General Info</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First name</td>
<td>The local user’s first name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last name</td>
<td>The local user’s last name.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 9-3  Add User dialog box (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>User ID</td>
<td>The local user’s login name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>The local user’s system login password (not conference or chairperson passcode). The password must satisfy the local password rules specified for the system (see “Local Password Requirements” on page 37).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Confirm password</td>
<td>Retype the password to verify that you entered it correctly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Account disabled</td>
<td>If checked, user does not have conferencing privileges and can’t log into the system management interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Associated Roles</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Available roles</td>
<td>Lists the roles available for assignment to the user. All users automatically have the Conferencing User role; it’s not listed or explicitly assigned (but a conference room ID is required). See “User Roles Overview” on page 142.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selected roles</td>
<td>Lists the roles selected for assignment to the user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Conference Passcodes</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chairperson passcode</td>
<td>The numeric passcode that identifies chairpersons in the user’s conferences. If none, the user’s conferences don't include the chairperson feature. Must contain numeric characters only (the digits 0-9) and may be up to 16 digits long. Can’t be the same as the conference passcode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conference passcode</td>
<td>The numeric passcode that callers must enter to join the user’s conferences. If none, the user’s conferences don’t require a passcode. Must contain numeric characters only (the digits 0-9) and may be up to 16 digits long. Can’t be the same as the chairperson passcode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:**
If Tandberg Codian MCUs are included in the Polycom DMA system’s pool of conferencing resources, don’t assign a chairperson passcode without also assigning a conference passcode. If a conference with only one passcode (either chairperson or conference) lands on a Codian MCU, all callers to the conference must enter that passcode.
See also:

“User Roles Overview” on page 142
“Adding Users Overview” on page 143
“Users” on page 144
“Users Procedures” on page 152
“Conference Rooms Procedures” on page 154

Edit User Dialog Box

The following table describes the parts of the **Edit User** dialog box. The **User ID** is not editable. The other **General Info** items are editable only for local (not enterprise) users.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>General Info</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First name</td>
<td>The local user’s first name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last name</td>
<td>The local user’s last name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User ID</td>
<td>The local user’s login name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Password</strong></td>
<td>The local user’s system login password (not conference or chairperson passcode). The password must satisfy the local password rules specified for the system (see “Local Password Requirements” on page 37).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Confirm password</td>
<td>Retype the password to verify that you entered it correctly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Account disabled</td>
<td>If checked, user does not have conferencing privileges and can’t log into the system management interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Account locked</td>
<td>If checked, the system has locked the user’s account due to failed login attempts. An administrator can unlock the account by clearing the check box, but can’t lock it.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Associated Roles**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Available roles</td>
<td>Lists the roles available for assignment to the user. All users automatically have the Conferencing User role; it’s not listed or explicitly assigned (but a conference room ID is required). See “User Roles Overview” on page 142.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selected roles</td>
<td>Lists the roles selected for assignment to the user.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
See also:

“User Roles Overview” on page 142
“Adding Users Overview” on page 143
“Users” on page 144
“Users Procedures” on page 152
“Conference Rooms Procedures” on page 154
Conference Rooms Dialog Box

Lets you view, add, edit, and delete the selected user’s conference rooms. A user may have three kinds of conference rooms:

- One enterprise conference room (if this is an enterprise user) automatically assigned to the user as part of the enterprise directory integration process. You can’t delete this conference room, but you can modify it.

- Custom conference rooms manually added using the Add command in this dialog box.

- Calendared conference rooms created automatically when the user uses the Polycom Conferencing Add-in for Microsoft Outlook to set up Polycom Conference meetings in Outlook. You can modify some of the settings for these conference rooms, but not the ones set in the meeting invitation.

The following table describes the parts of the Conference Rooms dialog box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Room ID</td>
<td>The unique ID of the room. Icons identify enterprise conference rooms and calendared conference rooms.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dial-in #</td>
<td>Number used to dial into conference room. Automatically set to the dialing prefix plus room ID.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conference Template</td>
<td>The template used by the conference room, which defines the conference properties (or links to the RMX profile) used for its conferences.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MCU Pool Order</td>
<td>MCU pool order used by this conference room. See “MCU Pool Orders” on page 70.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max Participants</td>
<td>Maximum number of callers allowed to join the conference. Automatic means the MCU’s maximum is used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial Start Time</td>
<td>For a conference room created by the system for a calendared meeting, the start time and date of the meeting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add</td>
<td>Opens the Add Conference Room dialog box, where you can create a new custom conference room for this user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit</td>
<td>Opens the Edit Conference Room dialog box, where you can modify the selected conference room.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete</td>
<td>Deletes the selected conference room. You’re prompted to confirm. You can’t delete enterprise conference rooms or calendared meeting conference rooms, only custom conference rooms added manually in the Polycom DMA system.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Add Conference Room Dialog Box

Lets you create a custom conference room for this user. For a local user, you must add at least one conference room to give the user conferencing access.

You can create additional custom conference rooms (for a local or enterprise user) in order to offer the user a different conferencing experience (template) or just an alternate (maybe simpler) room ID and dial-in number.

The following table describes the parts of the Add Conference Room dialog box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Room ID</td>
<td>The unique ID of the conference room. Click Generate to let the system pick an available ID (from the range set in User Experience Settings).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dial-in #</td>
<td>Number used to dial into conference room. Automatically set to the dialing prefix plus room ID.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Conference template | The template used by the conference room, which defines the conference properties (or links to the RMX profile) used for its conferences.  
If not selected, the room uses the highest-priority template associated with any group to which the user belongs, or if none, the system’s default template. See “User Experience Settings” on page 100. |
| MCU pool order    | MCU pool order used by this conference room.  
If not selected, the room uses the highest-priority pool order associated with any group to which the user belongs, or if none, the system’s default pool order. See “MCU Pool Orders” on page 70 and “User Experience Settings” on page 100. |
Table 9-6  Add Conference Room dialog box (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Max participants</td>
<td>Maximum number of callers allowed to join the conference. <strong>Automatic</strong> means the MCU's maximum is used. If not selected, the room uses the system's default maximum. See “User Experience Settings” on page 100.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conference Duration</td>
<td>Maximum duration of a conference (in hours and minutes) or <strong>Unlimited</strong> (the maximum in this case depends on the MCU). If not selected, the room uses the longest duration associated with any group to which the user belongs, or if none, the system's default maximum duration. See &quot;User Experience Settings&quot; on page 100.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also:

“User Roles Overview” on page 142
“Adding Users Overview” on page 143
“Users” on page 144
“Conference Rooms Dialog Box” on page 149
“Users Procedures” on page 152
“Conference Rooms Procedures” on page 154

Edit Conference Room Dialog Box

Lets you view or modify a conference room’s details. The following table describes the parts of the **Edit Conference Room** dialog box.

Table 9-7  Edit Conference Room dialog box

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Room ID</td>
<td>The unique ID of the conference room. Can't be edited for an enterprise conference room or calendared meeting conference room. For a custom conference room, click <strong>Generate</strong> to let the system pick an available ID (from the range set in <strong>User Experience Settings</strong>).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dial-in #</td>
<td>Number used to dial into conference room. Automatically set to the <strong>dialing prefix</strong> plus room ID.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conference template</td>
<td>The template used by the conference room, which defines the conference properties (or links to the RMX profile) used for its conferences. If <strong>Use default</strong> is selected, the value from <strong>User Experience Settings</strong> applies.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Table 9-7  Edit Conference Room dialog box (continued)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pool order</td>
<td>MCU pool order used by this conference room. See “MCU Pool Orders” on page 70.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If Use default is selected, the value from User Experience Settings applies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max participants</td>
<td>Maximum number of callers allowed to join the conference.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If Use default is selected, the value from User Experience Settings applies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conference</td>
<td>Maximum duration of a conference (in hours and minutes) or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duration</td>
<td>Unlimited (the maximum in this case depends on the MCU).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calendar Event</td>
<td>This section appears only for calendared meeting conference rooms.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>It shows the following (read-only):</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Start time and date (from meeting invitation).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Expiration date. The conference room is deleted from the system after this date.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also:

“User Roles Overview” on page 142
“Adding Users Overview” on page 143
“Users” on page 144
“Conference Rooms Dialog Box” on page 149
“Users Procedures” on page 152
“Conference Rooms Procedures” on page 154

**Users Procedures**

**Caution**
To eliminate a serious security risk, perform the first procedure below as soon as possible after installing your system.

1. **To remove the default admin account and create a local account for yourself with administrative privileges**
   
   Log in as admin and go to **Operations > Users**.
   
   The **Users** page appears.
2 Create a local user account for yourself with the Administrator role. See “To add a local user” on page 153.

3 Log out and log back in using your new local account.

4 Go to Operations > Users and delete the admin account. See “To delete a local user” on page 154.

To find a user or users

1 Go to Operations > Users.

The Users page appears.

2 For a simple search, enter a search string in the Search users field and press Enter.

The system matches the string you enter against the beginning of the user ID, first name, and last name. If you enter “sa” it displays users whose IDs or first or last names begin with “sa.” To search for a string not at the beginning of the field, you can use an asterisk (*) as a wildcard. You can restrict the search to local users by selecting the check box.

3 For more search options, click the down arrow to the right.

Additional controls appear that let you search specific fields and use specific filters.

4 Select the filters you want, enter search strings for one or more fields, and click Search.

The system displays the users matching your search criteria.

To add a local user

1 Go to Operations > Users.

2 In the Actions list, click Add.

3 In the Add User dialog box, complete the General Info fields. See “Add User Dialog Box” on page 145.

4 To assign the user additional roles (besides Conferencing User), click Roles. Select the role or roles you want to assign and use the arrow button to move them to the Selected Roles list.

5 Click OK.

To edit a user

1 Go to Operations > Users.

2 If necessary, filter the Users list to find the user to be modified.

3 Select the user and click Edit.
4 As required, edit the General Info, Roles, and Conference Passcodes sections of the User Properties dialog box. See “Edit User Dialog Box” on page 147.

For enterprise users, you can change their roles and their chairperson and conference passcodes, and you can enable or disable their accounts, but you can’t change user names, user IDs, or user passwords. For local users, you can change everything but the user ID.

5 Click OK.

To delete a local user
1 Go to Operations > Users.
2 If necessary, filter the Users list to find the user to be deleted.
   You can only delete local users, not users added from the enterprise directory.
3 Select the user and click Delete User.
4 In the Delete User dialog box, click Yes.
   The user is deleted from the Polycom DMA system.

See also:
“User Roles Overview” on page 142
“Adding Users Overview” on page 143
“Users” on page 144
“Add User Dialog Box” on page 145
“Edit User Dialog Box” on page 147
“Conference Rooms Procedures” on page 154

Conference Rooms Procedures

To add a conference room to a user
1 Go to Operations > Users and select the user to whom you want to add a room.
2 In the Actions list, click Manage Conf Rooms.
   The Conference Rooms dialog box appears.
3 Click Add.
   The Add Conference Room dialog box appears.
4 Complete the settings for the new conference room. See “Add Conference Room Dialog Box” on page 150.
5. Click OK.

**To edit one of a user’s conference rooms**

1. Go to **Operations > Users** and select the user whose conference room you want to edit.

2. In the **Actions** list, click **Manage Conf Rooms**.
   
   The **Conference Rooms** dialog box appears.

3. Select the conference room you want to edit and click **Edit**.
   
   The **Edit Conference Room** dialog box appears.

4. Modify the settings you want to change. See “**Edit Conference Room Dialog Box**” on page 151.

5. Click **OK**.

**To delete one of a user’s custom conference rooms**

1. Go to **Operations > Users** and select the user whose custom conference room you want to delete.

2. In the **Actions** list, click **Manage Conf Rooms**.
   
   The **Conference Rooms** dialog box appears.

3. Select the conference room you want to remove and click **Delete**.
   
   You can’t delete an enterprise conference room or a conference room created by the system for a calendared meeting.

4. When prompted to confirm, click **Yes**.

See also:

“**User Roles Overview**” on page 142

“**Adding Users Overview**” on page 143

“**Users**” on page 144

“**Conference Rooms Dialog Box**” on page 149

“**Add Conference Room Dialog Box**” on page 150

“**Edit Conference Room Dialog Box**” on page 151

“**Users Procedures**” on page 152
Groups functionality is available only if your Polycom DMA system is integrated with an enterprise directory. User groups are defined in your enterprise directory and imported into the Polycom DMA system from there.

**Note**
- You must be an enterprise user (with the appropriate user role assignments) to see and work with enterprise users. A local user can only see other local users, regardless of user roles.
- Microsoft Active Directory provides two group types and four group scopes. The Polycom DMA system supports only security groups (not distribution groups) with universal or global scope.

The *Groups* page provides access to information about enterprise groups. From it, you can:
- Import enterprise groups.
- Specify Polycom DMA system roles to be assigned to members of a group.
- Specify a conference template and MCU pool order to be used for a group.

The following table describes the fields on the *Groups* page.

**Table 9-8  Fields on the Groups page**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Group Name</td>
<td>Name of the group, as defined in the enterprise directory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Description from the enterprise directory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Domain</td>
<td>Name of the domain to which the group belongs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conference Template</td>
<td>Template assigned to the group, if any. See “Conference Templates” on page 75.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MCU Pool Order</td>
<td>MCU pool order assigned to this group, if any. See “MCU Pool Orders” on page 70.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assigned Roles</td>
<td>DMA system roles, if any, that are automatically assigned to members of this group (all users automatically have the Conferencing User role; it’s not listed or explicitly assigned). See “User Roles Overview” on page 142.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
See also:

“Users” on page 144
“Import Enterprise Groups Dialog Box” on page 157
“Edit Group Dialog Box” on page 158
“Enterprise Groups Procedures” on page 159

Import Enterprise Groups Dialog Box

The following table describes the fields in the Import Enterprise Groups dialog box.

**Table 9-9 Fields in the Import Enterprise Groups dialog box**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Search domain</td>
<td>Optionally, select a domain to search.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Group               | To find all groups, leave blank. To find groups beginning with a specific letter or letters, enter the string. Then click Search. You can use a wildcard (*) for more complex searches, such as:  
  - s*admins  
  - *eng*  
| Search results      | Lists the security groups in your enterprise directory that match the search string. The system only retrieves the first 1000 groups found. If the count shows 1000, you may need to refine your search criteria. |
| Groups to import    | Lists the groups you’ve selected for import, using the arrows to move them from the Search results box. |

See also:

“Users” on page 144
“Groups” on page 156
“Edit Group Dialog Box” on page 158
“Enterprise Groups Procedures” on page 159
## Edit Group Dialog Box

The following table describes the fields in the Edit Group dialog box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Conference template</td>
<td>Template assigned to the group, if any. See “Conference Templates” on page 75. If not selected, the value from User Experience Settings applies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MCU pool order</td>
<td>MCU pool order assigned to this group. See “MCU Pool Orders” on page 70. If not selected, the value from User Experience Settings applies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conference Duration</td>
<td>Default maximum duration of a conference (in hours and minutes) or Unlimited (the maximum in this case depends on the MCU). If not selected, the value from User Experience Settings applies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Available roles</td>
<td>Lists the Polycom DMA system roles available for automatic assignment to members of this group (all users automatically have the Conferencing User role; it’s not listed or explicitly assigned). See “User Roles Overview” on page 142.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selected roles</td>
<td>Lists the roles you’ve selected for members of this group, using the arrows to move them from the Available roles box. Remember, ordinary Conferencing Users have no explicitly assigned role.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also:

“Users” on page 144
“Groups” on page 156
“Import Enterprise Groups Dialog Box” on page 157
“Enterprise Groups Procedures” on page 159
Enterprise Groups Procedures

The Polycom DMA system’s ability to import an enterprise group and assign it a conference template lets you customize the conferencing experience for all members of the group.

The ability to assign defined Polycom DMA user roles to an enterprise group lets you manage administrative access to the Polycom DMA system in your enterprise directory.

You must be logged into the system as an enterprise user with the Administrator role to perform these procedures.

To set up an enterprise group for Polycom DMA management and operations users

1. In your enterprise directory, create a security group containing the users to whom you want to give access to the Polycom DMA system’s management and operations interface.

   It’s up to you whether you want to assign all the user roles to a single group or create separate groups for each user role.

2. On the Polycom DMA system, go to Operations > Groups.

3. In the Actions list, click Import Enterprise Groups.

4. In the Import Enterprise Groups dialog box, use Search to find the system administration group you created. Then move it to the Groups to import box and click OK. See “Import Enterprise Groups Dialog Box” on page 157.

5. On the Groups page, select your new group and, in the Actions list, click Edit.

6. In the Edit Group dialog box, move the user roles you want to give members of this group to the Selected roles box. See “Edit Group Dialog Box” on page 158.

7. Click OK.

   All members of this group will now share the system access privileges you assigned to the group.

8. To grant Polycom DMA system access privileges to a user or remove those privileges, just add or remove the user from the appropriate enterprise group.

To specify which MCUs a group uses by assigning an MCU Pool Order

1. If necessary, create the MCU pool and the pool order needed. See “MCU Pool Procedures” on page 69 and “MCU Pool Order Procedures” on page 73.
2 Go to **Operations > Groups**, select the group to which you need to assign a pool order, and in the **Actions** list, click **Edit**.

3 In the **Edit Group** dialog box’s **MCU pool order** list, select the pool order to be used for this group. See “**Edit Group Dialog Box**” on page 158.

4 Click **OK**.

**To set up a custom conferencing experience for an enterprise group**

1 Go to **Configuration > Conference Setup > Conference Templates** and create a template that defines the conferencing experience for this group. See “**Conference Templates Procedures**” on page 98.

2 Optionally, in the **Actions** list, click **Move Up** until your new conference template has Priority 1.

   This ensures that users who have access to multiple conference templates will use this one for their enterprise conference room. You can choose a different priority level, but then some members of the group for which you created the template may end up using a higher-ranking template.

3 Go to **Operations > Groups**, select the group for which you created the template, and in the **Actions** list, click **Edit**.

4 In the **Edit Group** dialog box’s **Conference template** list, select the template you created for this group. See “**Edit Group Dialog Box**” on page 158.

5 Click **OK**.

See also:

   “**Users**” on page 144

   “**Groups**” on page 156

   “**Import Enterprise Groups Dialog Box**” on page 157

   “**Edit Group Dialog Box**” on page 158
This chapter describes the following Polycom® Distributed Media Application™ (DMA™) 7000 system operations topics:

- Management and Maintenance Overview
- Recommended Regular Maintenance
- Dashboard
- Sessions
- Tools
- System Log Files
- Backing Up and Restoring
- Upgrading the Software
- Adding a Second Server
- Replacing a Failed Server
- Shutting Down and Restarting

Management and Maintenance Overview

The Polycom DMA system requires relatively little ongoing maintenance beyond monitoring the status of the system and downloading backups and other data you want to archive. All system management and maintenance tasks can be performed in the management interface. See the appropriate topic for your user role:

- Administrator Responsibilities
- Auditor Responsibilities
Administrator Responsibilities

As a Polycom DMA system administrator, you’re responsible for the installation and ongoing maintenance of the system. You should be familiar with the following configurations, tasks, and operations:

- Installing licenses when the system is first installed and when additional MCUs are added. See “License” on page 46.
- Monitoring system health and performing the recommended regular maintenance. See “Recommended Regular Maintenance” on page 163.
- Using the system tools provided to aid with system and network diagnostics, monitoring, and troubleshooting. See “Tools” on page 172. Should the need arise, Polycom Global Services personnel may ask you to run these tools.
- Upgrading the system when upgrades/patches are made available. See “Upgrading the Software” on page 181.

Administrative Best Practices

The following are some of our recommendations for administrative best practices:

- Perform the recommended regular maintenance.
- Except in emergencies or when instructed to by Polycom Global Services personnel, don’t reconfigure, install an upgrade, or restore a backup when there are active calls and conferences on the system. Many of these operations will require a system restart to complete, which will result in these calls and conferences being dropped. Before performing these operations, busy out all MCUs and wait for all conferencing activity to cease.
- Before you reconfigure, install an upgrade, or restore a backup, manually create a new backup. Then download and archive this backup in the event that something unforeseen occurs and it becomes necessary to restore the system to a known good state.
- For proper name resolution and smooth network operations, configure at least one DNS server in your network configuration (see “Network” on page 41), and preferably two or more. This allows the Polycom DMA system to function properly in the event of a single external DNS failure.
- Configure at least one NTP server in your time configuration (see “System Time” on page 45) and preferably two or more. Proper time management helps ensure that your cluster operates efficiently and helps in diagnosing any issues that may arise in the future. Proper system time is also essential for accurate audit and CDR data.
- Unless otherwise instructed by Polycom Global Services or to change the default root password after installation, always use the High Security setting. See “Security Configuration” on page 32.
Auditor Responsibilities

As a Polycom DMA system auditor, you’re responsible for managing the system’s logging and history retention. You should be familiar with the following configurations and operations:

- Configuring logging for the system. See “Logging Configuration” on page 49. These settings affect the number and the contents of the log archives available for download from the system. See “System Log Files” on page 174. Polycom Global Services personnel may ask you to adjust the logging configuration and/or download and send them logs.

- Configuring history retention levels for the system. See “History Record Retention” on page 50. These settings affect how much system activity history is retained on the system and available for download as CDRs. See “Call History Report” on page 189, “Conference History Report” on page 191, and “Export CDR Data” on page 194.

Auditor Best Practices

The following are some of our recommendations for auditing best practices:

- Unless otherwise instructed by Polycom Global Services, configure logging at the production level with a rolling frequency of every day and a retention period of 60 days. If hard drive space becomes an issue, decrease the retention period incrementally until the disk space issue is resolved.

- Download log archives regularly and back them up securely (preferably offsite as well as onsite).

- Export CDRs regularly and back them up securely (preferably offsite as well as onsite).

Recommended Regular Maintenance

Perform the following tasks to keep your Polycom DMA system operating trouble-free and at peak efficiency. These tasks can be done quickly and should be run at least weekly.

Regular archive of backups

Log into the Polycom DMA system, go to Operations > Backup and Restore, and check for new backups. If there are new backups, download and archive the latest one.

Every night, the Polycom DMA system determines whether its configuration or database data have changed since the last time it performed a backup. If so, it creates a new backup instance. For details on backups, see “Back up and Restoring” on page 176.
General system health and capacity checks

On the Dashboard (see “Dashboard” on page 166), verify that no alerts are visible and that:

- The system didn’t run out of capacity at any point in time. If the Capacity Usage History graph shows spikes at or near the system’s maximum capacity, it may be time to add more.

- All the expected MCUs are connected, in service, and have the expected capacities. If there appear to be issues with an MCU, check its configuration and status, and if necessary, call Polycom Global Services. See “Device Management” on page 59.

- The H.323 Signaling Status section indicates the status of the gatekeeper connection is OK, and that the network latency between the system and gatekeeper is within the range you would expect for your network (it may be helpful to keep latency records for comparison over time). If it isn’t, contact your network administrator or Polycom Global Services.

- The Network Status section shows the correct number of cluster members (1 or 2), one of which is the active web host, and indicates that the network interface(s) for the node(s) are in a good state (upward green arrow) and have the expected speeds:

  - For Private, 1000 Mbps / Full. Not applicable to a single-server system. In a two-server cluster, errors on the private link may indicate a problem with the system. Check the crossover cable connecting the two servers. If necessary, shut down both servers, replace the cable, and restart the servers. If that doesn’t solve the problem, contact Polycom Global Services.

  - For Public, the speed you expect for your enterprise network. Errors on the enterprise link may indicate an error in the interface between the Polycom DMA system and your enterprise network. Contact your network administrator to resolve the issue.

- The System Information section shows information for one or two nodes, depending on your system configuration. Verify that:

  - The disk space usage for each node is less than 90% and Total memory is greater than Free memory by at least 500 MB. If either is not true, contact Polycom Global Services. If disk usage is too high, reduce the number of days to retain log archives. See “Logging Configuration” on page 49.

  - The time for each cluster node is correct and within a few seconds of the other. If not, check your time configuration and NTP servers. See “System Time” on page 45.

Enterprise directory health

If the Polycom DMA system is integrated with an enterprise directory, check the following (you must be logged in as an enterprise user):
• **Reports > Enterprise Directory Integration** (see “Enterprise Directory Integration Report” on page 196). Check the status and results of the last cache update, and verify that membership information for imported groups, if any, was successfully loaded.

• **Reports > Conference Room Errors** (see “Conference Room Errors Report” on page 200). Check:
  
  — The total number of users and the number of users with conference room IDs. Make sure both are about what you would expect for your system (it may be helpful to keep records for comparison over time). Contact your enterprise directory administrator if necessary.
  
  — The number of users with blank, invalid, or duplicate conference room IDs. These are enterprise users not properly provisioned for conferencing on the Polycom DMA system. They’re listed below. Contact your enterprise directory administrator to resolve issues with these users.

• **Reports > Orphaned Groups and Users** (see “Orphaned Groups and Users Report” on page 199). Verify that the number of orphans is not unexpectedly large.

• **Reports > Enterprise Passcode** (see “Enterprise Passcode Errors Report” on page 203). If you’re assigning conference and/or chairperson passcodes to enterprise users, verify that the number of passcode errors is not unexpectedly large.

**Security configuration**

Go to **Configuration > System > Security Configuration** and verify that the security settings are what you expect (we strongly recommend always using the high security mode). Any departure from the settings you expected to see may indicate that your system has been compromised. See “Security Configuration” on page 32.

**Certificates**

Go to **Configuration > System > Certificate Management** and verify that the list of certificates contains the certificates you’ve installed and looks as you would expect (an archived screen capture may be helpful for comparison).

Display the details for any certificate you’ve installed and verify they are as expected (again, an archived screen capture may be helpful for comparison).

**CDR export**

If you want to preserve detailed call and conference history data in spreadsheet form off the Polycom DMA system, periodically download the system’s CDR (call detail record) data to your PC. See “Export CDR Data” on page 194.
Dashboard

When you log into the Polycom DMA system, the system Dashboard appears. You can return to the Dashboard from any other page by clicking the Dashboard (“home”) button to the left of the menus. Use the system Dashboard to view information about system health and activity levels.

The following table describes the Dashboard sections.

Table 10-1  Sections of the Dashboard

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Refresh</td>
<td>To refresh the Dashboard information every 5 to 60 seconds, check the Automatically refresh check box and set the desired interval. To refresh manually, click Refresh. The Last Updated field shows when the display was last refreshed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Usage</td>
<td>Graphically displays current video and voice port usage levels. Lists the number of conferences and calls, the number of video and voice ports available, and the number of video and voice ports in use.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capacity Usage History</td>
<td>Graphically displays the maximum number of concurrent calls per day (calendared, non-calendared, and total) for the past 180 days. Hover over a bar to see the date and call numbers.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 10-1  Sections of the Dashboard  (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Calendaring Service</td>
<td>If the Polycom DMA system is integrated with a Microsoft Exchange server (see “Calendaring Service” on page 101), displays the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The integration status, which can be one of the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unavailable — A service status or inter-node communication problem prevented determination of the integration status.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Error — The system was unable to establish a connection to the Exchange server. This could be a network or Exchange server problem, or it could be a login failure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Awaiting Enterprise Directory — The system isn’t integrated with the enterprise directory, required for calendar integration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Primary SMTP mailbox not found — The mailbox configured for the Polycom DMA system isn’t in the system’s enterprise directory cache.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Subscription pending — The Polycom DMA system has asked the Exchange server to send it notifications and is waiting to receive its first notification to confirm that the Exchange server can communicate with the system. If this status persists for more than a minute or so, there is likely a configuration problem (such as an invalid certificate or the Exchange server is unable to resolve the DMA system’s FQDN).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Exchange authentication failed — The credentials for the Polycom DMA system’s mailbox are no longer valid (e.g., the password has expired).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>OK — The Polycom DMA system is receiving and processing notifications from the Exchange server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The host name or IP address for the Exchange server as entered on the Calendaring Service page.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The Polycom DMA system’s mailbox address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The number of calendared meetings today.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>License Status</td>
<td>Shows the number and type of MCUs for which the Polycom DMA system is licensed and the number of MCUs the system is using.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Login History</td>
<td>Shows the time, date, and source (host name or IP address) of the last successful login (prior to your current session) by your user ID. It also shows the time, date, and source of the last failed login by your user ID and the number of consecutive failures before your current successful login. This login history is cleared when the system restarts.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 10-1  Sections of the Dashboard (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>MCUs</strong></td>
<td>Displays information about the current health and status of the Polycom RMX MCUs registered to the DMA system. The table lists the MCUs and shows their connection and service status, usage data, and the network latency (round trip) between each MCU and the Polycom DMA system. The status icons are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Connected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Connected securely (encrypted connection)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In service</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Busied out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Supports conference recording</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Doesn’t support conference recording</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Supports Shared Number Dialing IVR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Warning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hover over an icon to see the associated status message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CMA Integration Status</strong></td>
<td>Indicates whether the Polycom DMA system is integrated with a Polycom CMA system (see “CMA Integration” on page 51).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Dashboard System Operations

Table 10-1 Sections of the Dashboard (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H.323 Signaling Status</td>
<td>If the Polycom DMA system is configured for H.323 calls and registered with a gatekeeper, displays the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The gatekeeper (GK) registration status, which can be one of the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Processing configuration — The system is making the requested configuration changes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Registering — The system is attempting to register with the gatekeeper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Retrying — The system is attempting to register again.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Registered to primary GK — The system is successfully registered to its primary gatekeeper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Registered to secondary GK — The system is successfully registered to its secondary gatekeeper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Registered to alternate GK — The system is registered to its primary gatekeeper’s alternate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Error — There is a problem with the signaling module.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The IP address of the registered GK.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The system’s H.323 prefix.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The network latency (round trip) between the GK and the Polycom DMA system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIP Signaling Status</td>
<td>Displays the SIP address (host name) for the system and the listening ports in use.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Network Status</td>
<td>Displays information about the system’s network connectivity. The collapsed view simply indicates if there is a network problem. Hover over the alert icon to see a description of the problem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The expanded view shows the active host, the number of cluster members, and the status of the Public (enterprise) and (for a two-server cluster) Private network connection for each cluster member.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Sessions page displays information about the currently active user login sessions and enables you to terminate a login session. You must be an Administrator user to terminate a login session.

The following table describes the parts of the Sessions list.

Table 10-1  Sections of the Dashboard  (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>System Information</td>
<td>Displays information about the application server or servers in the DMA system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The collapsed view simply indicates if there is a problem. Hover over the alert icon to see a description of the problem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For each server in the cluster, the expanded view displays:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Version Information</td>
<td>System, Proxias, and application software version numbers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Configuration</td>
<td>IP address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Memory (total and free)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Swap space (total and free)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Disk space (free and percent used)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Used log space and days to purge old logs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Uptime</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Time source, date, and time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hardware model and serial number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conferencing parameters</td>
<td>Enterprise directory integration status (enabled/disabled, encrypted/unencrypted connection)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Enterprise directory server’s fully qualified domain name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Time/date of last enterprise cache refresh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Number of enterprise conference rooms, local users, and custom conference rooms (with calendared shown in parentheses)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Number of active calls and conferences</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 10-2  Information in the Sessions list

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Domain</td>
<td>The domain to which the user belongs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User ID</td>
<td>The user’s login name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Host Address</td>
<td>The IP address from which the user logged in.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
To terminate a user’s login session

1 In the Sessions list, select the login session you want to terminate.
2 In the Actions list, click Terminate Session.
   A dialog box asks you to confirm.
3 Click Yes.
   The system terminates the session immediately. The terminated user is informed that the connection to the server was lost.

See also:
   “Session Configuration” on page 36
   “Management and Maintenance Overview” on page 161

Change Password Dialog Box

The system may be configured to expire local user passwords after a certain number of days (see “Local Password Requirements” on page 37). If your password has expired when you try to log into the system, the Change Password dialog box prompts you for a new password.

You can also change your password from the Users page (but not more often than specified on the Local Password Requirements page).

The following table describes the fields in the dialog box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>User ID</td>
<td>The user name with which you're logging in. Display only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Old password</td>
<td>For security reasons, you must re-enter your old password.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Polycom DMA system’s Tools menu includes several useful network and system status commands, which you can run and view the output of in the system’s familiar graphical interface. Each command is run on each server in the cluster, and the results are displayed in a separate panel for each server.

### Ping

Use Ping to verify that the Polycom DMA system’s servers can communicate with another node in the network.

**To run ping on each server**

1. Go to Tools > Ping.
2. Enter an IP address or host name and click Ping. The system displays results of the command for each server.

### Traceroute

Use Traceroute to see the route that the servers use to reach the address you specify and the latency (round trip) for each hop.

**To run traceroute on each server**

1. Go to Tools > Traceroute.
2. Enter an IP address or host name and click Trace. The system displays results of the command for each server.

---

**Table 10-3  Change Password dialog box (continued)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>New password</td>
<td>Enter a new password. The password must satisfy the local password rules specified for the system (see “Local Password Requirements” on page 37).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Confirm new password</td>
<td>Retype the password to confirm that you entered it correctly.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also:

“Security Configuration” on page 32

“Management and Maintenance Overview” on page 161
Use Top to see an overview of each server’s current status, including CPU and memory usage, number of tasks, and list of running processes. The displays update every few seconds.

To run top on each server

>> Go to Tools > Top.

The system displays results of the command for each server.

Use I/O Stats to see CPU resource allocation and read/write statistics for each server.

To run iostat on each server

>> Go to Tools > I/O Stats.

The system displays results of the command for each server.

Use SAR to see a system activity report for each server.

To run sar on each server

>> Go to Tools > SAR.

The system displays results of the command for each server.

See also:

“Management and Maintenance Overview” on page 161
“Recommended Regular Maintenance” on page 163
System Log Files

The System Log Files page lists the available system log file archives and lets you run the following Action list commands:

- **Roll Logs** — Closes and archives the current log files and starts new log files.

- **Download Active Logs** — Creates and downloads an archive that contains snapshots of the current log files, but doesn’t close the current log files. If your system is a two-server cluster, in the File Download dialog box you can select which node’s logs to download.

- **Download Archived Logs** — Downloads the selected log file archive.

- **Delete Archived Logs** — Deletes the selected log file archive. You may only delete archives that have been downloaded.

- **Show Download History** — Displays the Download History list for the selected log file archive, showing who downloaded the archive and when. This command is only available if the selected archive has been downloaded.

You can change the logging level, rolling frequency, and retention period at Configuration > System > Logging Configuration. See “Logging Configuration” on page 49.

The archives are Gzip-compressed tar files. Each archive contains a number of individual log files.

The detailed technical data in the log files is not useful to you, but can help Polycom Global Services resolve problems and provide technical support for your system.

In such a situation, your support representative may ask you to download log archives and send them to Polycom Global Services. You may be asked to manually roll logs in order to begin gathering data anew. After a certain amount of the activity of interest, you may be asked to download the active logs and send them to Polycom Global Services.

The following table describes the fields in the System Log Files list.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 10-4 Information in the System Log Files list</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Column</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Host</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Polycom, Inc.
### System Logs Procedures

**To download a log archive to your PC or workstation**

1. Go to Tools > System Log Files.
   
   The System Log Files page appears.

2. To download a listed log archive:
   
   a. Select the file you want.
   
   b. In the Actions list, click **Download Archived Logs**.
   
   c. In the dialog box, select a location and click **Save**.

3. To download an archive of the currently open log files (but not close them):
   
   a. In the Actions list, click **Download Active Logs**.
   
   b. In the dialog box, specify a location and file name, and click **Save**.

**To manually roll the system logs**

1. Go to Tools > System Log Files.
   
   The System Log Files page appears.

2. In the Actions list, click **Roll Logs**. Wait a few seconds.
   
   The system closes and archives the current log files and starts writing new ones. A dialog box informs you that logs have been rolled, and the new log
archive appears in the System Log Files list. For a two-node cluster, an archive is created for each node.

3 Click OK.

**To delete a system log archive**

1 Go to Tools > System Log Files.
   The System Log Files page appears.

2 Select the log archive and verify that the Show Download History command appears, indicating that it has been downloaded at least once and can be deleted. Click the command to see the Download History list.

3 In the Actions list, click Delete Archived Logs.
   A confirmation dialog box appears.

4 Click Yes.

See also:

- “Management and Maintenance Overview” on page 161
- “Recommended Regular Maintenance” on page 163
- “Call History Report” on page 189
- “Conference History Report” on page 191
- “Export CDR Data” on page 194

### Backing Up and Restoring

Every night, the Polycom DMA system determines whether its configuration or local user data have changed. If so, it creates a backup of that data, plus the audit records as of the time of the backup, on each server. It keeps the most recent ten backups on each server (deleting the oldest backup file when a new one is created).

The Polycom DMA system’s **Backup and Restore** page lets you:

- Manually create a backup at any time.
- Download backup files from the server for safekeeping.
- Upload backup files to the server.
- Restore the system configuration and local user data from a specific backup file.

In addition, the Polycom DMA USB Configuration Utility (on the USB stick used to initially configure the network and system parameters) can restore the Polycom DMA system from a backup file that you load onto the USB stick.
The following table describes the fields in the **Backup and Restore** list.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Creation Date</td>
<td>Timestamp of the backup file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Name of the backup file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Size</td>
<td>Size of the backup file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Version</td>
<td>Version number of the application that created the backup file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHA1</td>
<td>SHA1 checksum for the backup file. You can use this to confirm that a downloaded file is an exact copy of one on the server.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Backup and Restore Procedures**

**Caution**

Restoring from a backup requires a system restart and terminates all active conferences.

**Note**

You can restore the system while it's integrated with a Polycom CMA system, but the result depends on the state when the backup you're restoring from was made. If the system was integrated with a Polycom CMA system when the backup you're restoring was made, that integration is restored. If the system wasn't integrated when the backup was made, it will no longer be integrated after restoring.

**To download a backup file**

1. Go to **Operations > Backup and Restore**.

   The list contains the last ten backup files.
To create a new backup file
1. Go to Operations > Backup and Restore.
2. Verify that the oldest backup file listed is one you don’t want to keep or have already downloaded.
   Only ten files are saved. Creating a new backup will delete the oldest file (unless there are fewer than ten).
3. In the Actions list, click Create New.
   A confirmation dialog tells you the backup archive was created.
4. Click OK.

To upload a backup file
1. Go to Operations > Backup and Restore.
2. Verify that the oldest backup file listed is one you don’t want to keep or have already downloaded.
   Only ten files are saved. Uploading a backup will delete the oldest file (unless there are fewer than ten).
3. In the Actions list, click Upload.
4. Choose a backup file to upload and click Open.
   The File Upload dialog box indicates when the upload is complete.
5. Click Close.

   The system asks if you want to restore now from the backup file you just uploaded.
6. If you don’t want to restore (and restart the system) now, click Manually Later. When you’re ready to restore, use the procedure that follows this one.

7. To restore now, make sure you meet the criteria in the first step of the following procedure, and click Now. When asked to confirm, click Yes.
   A dialog box informs you when all files have been restored.
8 Click OK.

The system logs you out and the server reboots (typically, this takes about five minutes). After it comes back up, in a two-server cluster, the second node syncs to it, thus being restored to the same state.

**To restore from a backup file on the server**

1 If this is a two-server cluster, make sure that both nodes are running and clustered. Make sure that there are no calls on the system, and that all MCUs are out of service. See “MCU Procedures” on page 64.

2 Go to Operations > Backup and Restore.

3 Select the backup file from which you want to restore.

4 In the **Actions** list, click **Restore Selected**.

5 When asked to confirm that you want to restore, click **Yes**.

A dialog box informs you when all files have been restored.

6 Click OK.

The system logs you out and the server reboots (typically, this takes about five minutes). After it comes back up, in a two-server cluster, the second node syncs to it, thus being restored to the same state.

**To restore from a backup file on the USB stick**

1 If the system is running and accessible, log in as an Administrator, make sure that there are no calls on the system and that all MCUs are out of service. See “MCU Procedures” on page 64.

2 Shut down the system. See “Shutting Down and Restarting” on page 188.

3 Connect the USB memory stick containing the DMA USB Configuration Utility to a Windows PC.

4 When prompted, elect to run the DMA USB Configuration Utility.

**Note**

If autorun doesn’t work or is turned off, navigate to the USB memory stick using My Computer, Windows Explorer, or another file manager. Then start the Configuration Utility by double-clicking `dma7000-usb-config.exe`.

5 In the **DMA USB Configuration Utility** window, click **Copy a Backup to the USB Stick**.
Select the backup file from which you want to restore the system and click **Open**.

The utility displays an error message if the file isn’t a valid Polycom DMA system backup. Otherwise, it confirms that the backup file is in place.

The utility’s main window states that **The USB stick is ready to restore the system from a backup file**. At the bottom of the window, it displays information about the selected backup file.

**7** Close the utility.

**8** In your system tray, click **Safely Remove Hardware** and select **Safely Remove USB Mass Storage Device**. When a message tells you it’s safe to do so, disconnect the USB memory stick from the PC and take it to the data center housing the Polycom DMA system server(s).

**9** Make sure that the server or servers are turned off. Then insert the USB stick into a USB port on one of the servers and turn that node (but not the other, if there are two) on.

The server boots and the data in the backup file is applied. Typically, this takes about five minutes. Depending on the configuration changes being applied, the server may reboot so the changes can take effect.
10 If this is a two-server cluster, after the first node has rebooted (if necessary) and its front-panel LCD displays DMA Ready, turn on the second node.

The second node boots, finds the first node, and syncs to it, thus being restored to the same state. Depending on the configuration changes being applied, it may reboot so the changes can take effect.

When done, both servers’ LCDs display DMA Clustered.

See also:
“Management and Maintenance Overview” on page 161
“Recommended Regular Maintenance” on page 163

Upgrading the Software

The Polycom DMA system’s Upgrade Management page lets you upload a software upgrade package and install the upgrade on your system (both nodes, if present). It also lets you roll back to the previous version, if necessary.

This process can be used for patches, minor upgrades, and major upgrades. In all three cases, the current system configuration (users, MCUs, user experience settings, server settings, and security settings) are preserved.

Patches don’t require new license keys, but major and minor version upgrades do. Any of the three may require a system restart. If so, that information is displayed on the page after you upload the upgrade package.

The following table describes the parts of the Upgrade Management page.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Version Information</td>
<td>Shows the current system version and the rollback version (if any), which is the previous system version.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upgrade Package Details</td>
<td>Shows the version number and other information about the upgrade file that’s been uploaded (if any). Also indicates whether the system must be restarted after upgrading and displays a brief description, which includes an estimated install time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operation History</td>
<td>Lists each upgrade management operation (upgrade or downgrade), showing the node on which it was performed, package version, date of the operation, and which user performed it.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
See also:

“Management and Maintenance Overview” on page 161
“Recommended Regular Maintenance” on page 163
“Upgrade Procedures” on page 182

Upgrade Procedures

Note
The upgrade installation process automatically creates a backup, which enables you to roll back an upgrade (restore the previous version) if necessary. As a precaution, however, we recommend that you download a recent backup file before you begin to install an upgrade. See “Backing Up and Restoring” on page 176.

You can roll back only the last applied upgrade. Rolling back an upgrade restores the database to its state prior to the upgrade, so data may be lost.

To install an upgrade

1. Put the upgrade package file somewhere on or accessible from your PC.
2. Go to Operations > Upgrade Management.
3. In the Actions list, click Upload.
4. Select the upgrade package file and click Open.
   The File Upload dialog box indicates when the upload is complete.
5. Click Close.
   The Upgrade Package Details section displays information about the file you uploaded. The description includes an estimated install time.
6. Verify that the upgrade package is correct. If a system restart is required, make sure that there are no calls on the system and that all MCUs are out of service. See “MCU Procedures” on page 64.
   Most upgrades will require a restart.
7. In the Actions list, click Upgrade.
   A confirmation dialog box appears.
8. Click Yes.
   If a restart is required, a dialog box informs you that the upgrade is starting. Shortly after that, the system logs you out and restarts.
9. Click OK to log out immediately, or simply wait.
   When the upgrade process is finished, in a two-server cluster, both servers’ LCDs display DMA Clustered (in a single-server system, the LCD displays DMA Ready), and you’re able to log back in.
Upgrading the Software System Operations

10 Log back in and:

a In a two-server cluster, verify on the Dashboard that both servers are up and the private network connection is operating properly.

b Go to Operations > Upgrade Management and check the Operation History table.

c Go to Device > MCUs and put the MCUs back into service. See “MCU Procedures” on page 64.

11 Call Polycom Global Services if:

— After waiting significantly longer than the estimated install time, you’re still unable to log back in.

— You can log in, but the Dashboard shows only one node for a two-server cluster.

— The package version numbers on the two nodes are not the same.

To roll back an upgrade, restoring the previous version

1 Go to Operations > Upgrade Management.

2 Verify that you want to downgrade the system to the rollback version shown and that you're prepared for a system restart, if required.

Most rollbacks will require a restart.

3 In the Actions list, click Roll Back.

A confirmation dialog box appears.

4 Click Yes.

If a restart is required, a dialog box informs you that the downgrade is starting. Shortly after that, the system logs you out and restarts.

5 Click OK to log out immediately, or simply wait.

When the downgrade process is finished, in a two-server cluster, both servers’ LCDs display DMA Clustered (in a single-server system, the LCD displays DMA Ready), and you’re able to log back in.

Note
You may need to restart your browser or flush your browser cache in order to log back into the system.

6 Log back in and:

Note
You may need to restart your browser or flush your browser cache in order to log back into the system.
a In a two-server cluster, verify on the Dashboard that both servers are up and the private network connection is operating properly.

b Go to Operations > Upgrade Management and check the Operation History table.

c Go to Device > MCUs and put the MCUs back into service. See “MCU Procedures” on page 64.

7 Call Polycom Global Services if:
   - After waiting significantly longer than the estimated install time, you’re still unable to log back in.
   - You can log in, but the Dashboard shows only one node for a two-server cluster.
   - The package version numbers on the two nodes are not the same.

See also:
   “Management and Maintenance Overview” on page 161
   “Upgrading the Software” on page 181

Adding a Second Server

A single-server Polycom DMA system can be upgraded to a fault-tolerant two-server cluster at any time. For an overview of how a two-server cluster works and its advantages, see “Two-server Configuration” on page 2.

To form a two-server cluster, both servers must be running the same version of the Polycom DMA system software. Depending on the software level of your existing server, you can accomplish this in one of two ways:

• If your existing server is running an unpatched release version of the system software for which you have the installation DVD, follow the procedure in “Expanding an Unpatched System” on page 185.

• If your existing server is running a patched version of the system software different from that on the installation DVD, follow the procedure in “Expanding a Patched System” on page 186.

Both procedures assume that you’ve ordered and received the server expansion package, which includes the second server, its accessories, and a new License Certificate.

See also:
   “Management and Maintenance Overview” on page 161
   “Recommended Regular Maintenance” on page 163
   “Expanding an Unpatched System” on page 185
   “Expanding a Patched System” on page 186
Expanding an Unpatched System

To expand an unpatched single-server system into a two-server cluster

1. Unpack, inspect, and physically install the second server as described in its Getting Started Guide. Mount it in the rack adjacent to the first Polycom DMA system server (or close enough to connect them with one of the provided crossover Ethernet cables).

2. Log into your Polycom DMA system, go to Configuration > System > Network, and add the Node 2 host name and IP address for the second server. See “Network” on page 41.

   The first server (Node 1) reboots.

3. Connect the second server to the network:
   - a. Connect the GB 1 Ethernet port of the new server to the enterprise network.
   - b. Use one of the provided crossover cables to connect the GB 2 ports of the two servers.

   Caution
   The first server must be running properly before you turn on the second server.

4. Confirm that the first server is running and displays DMA Ready. Then turn on the second server, insert the installation DVD, and reboot it.

   The server boots from the DVD, and the installation commences. About 15-20 minutes later, the DVD ejects and the server reboots. It detects the presence of Node 1, gets its configuration settings from it, and joins the cluster. When done, both servers’ LCDs display DMA Clustered.

5. Log into the system, go to Configuration > System > License, and follow the procedure for obtaining and entering a license activation key. See “Add Licenses” on page 53.

6. On the Dashboard, check the License Status, Network Status, and System Information sections to verify that you now have a properly configured two-server cluster.

See also:
   - “Management and Maintenance Overview” on page 161
   - “Adding a Second Server” on page 184
   - “Expanding a Patched System” on page 186
Expanding a Patched System

To expand a patched single-server system into a two-server cluster

1. Unpack, inspect, and physically install the second server as described in its Getting Started Guide. Mount it in the rack adjacent to the first Polycom DMA system server (or close enough to connect them with one of the provided crossover Ethernet cables).

2. Connect the GB 1 Ethernet port of the new server to the enterprise network. Don’t connect the crossover cable between the two servers at this time.

3. Log into your existing Polycom DMA system and determine the software version (including patch level) installed on the first (existing) server. Write it down for later reference.

4. Go to Configuration > System > Network, and add the Node 2 host name and IP address for the second server. See “Network” on page 41. The first server (Node 1) reboots.

5. Shut down the first server (Node 1).

6. Using the USB Configuration Utility and the procedure in the Getting Started Guide, complete the installation and initial configuration of the new server as a stand-alone single-server system. If necessary, use your installation DVD to install the same release version of the software that’s on your first server.

7. Log into the new server, go to Operations > Upgrade Management, and install the patch(es) needed to make it match the software version on the first server. See “Upgrading the Software” on page 181.

8. Shut down the new server. See “Shutting Down and Restarting” on page 188.

9. Use one of the provided crossover cables to connect the GB 2 ports of the two servers.

10. Turn on the first server (Node 1).

Caution
Assign the new server its own real and virtual IP addresses. Don’t assign it the virtual IP address of the existing system.

Caution
The first server must be running properly before you turn on the second server.
11 When the first server displays **DMA Ready**, turn on the second server.

The second server boots, detects the presence of Node 1, gets its configuration settings from it, and joins the cluster. When done, both servers’ LCDs display **DMA Clustered**.

12 Log into the system, go to **Configuration > System > License**, and follow the procedure for obtaining and entering a license activation key. See “Add Licenses” on page 53.

13 On the **Dashboard**, check the **License Status**, **Network Status**, and **System Information** sections to verify that you now have a properly configured two-server cluster.

See also:

- “Management and Maintenance Overview” on page 161
- “Adding a Second Server” on page 184
- “Expanding an Unpatched System” on page 185

---

**Replacing a Failed Server**

Replacing a server is essentially the same process as adding a second server to a single-server system. As in that situation, you must make sure that both servers are running the same version of the Polycom DMA system software.

The procedure assumes that you’ve gone through the RMA process and received the replacement server package, which includes the server, its accessories, and a new License Certificate.

**To replace a failed server in a two-server cluster**

1 If you haven’t already done so, power down, uncable, and remove the failed server.

2 Log into your Polycom DMA system and determine the software version (including patch level) installed on the remaining server. Write it down for later reference.

3 Do one of the following:

   - If your system is running an unpatched release version of the system software for which you have the installation DVD, follow the procedure in “Expanding an Unpatched System” on page 185, skipping step 2.

   - If your system is running a patched version of the system software different from that on the installation DVD, follow the procedure in “Expanding a Patched System” on page 186, skipping steps 3 and 4.
Shutting Down and Restarting

The Polycom DMA system’s Power Management page lets you restart the system or turn it off completely. These commands affect both servers in a two-server cluster.

Both shutting down and restarting will terminate all existing calls and log out all current users.

To restart or shut down both servers

2. Do one of the following:
   - To restart the system, click Restart.
   - To shut down the system (turn off both servers), click Shut Down.
3. When asked to confirm that you want to restart or shut down, click Yes.

The system logs you out and each server shuts down. If you chose Restart, the server(s) reboot, and conference service becomes available again when the restart is complete (typically, this takes about five minutes).

If you chose Shut Down, the server(s) remain powered off until you manually turn them back on.

See also:

“Management and Maintenance Overview” on page 161
“Recommended Regular Maintenance” on page 163
This chapter describes the following Polycom® Distributed Media Application™ (DMA™) 7000 system reports topics:

- Call History Report
- Conference History Report
- Export CDR Data
- Enterprise Directory Integration Report
- Orphaned Groups and Users Report
- Conference Room Errors Report
- Export Conference Room Errors Report
- Enterprise Passcode Errors Report
- Export Enterprise Passcode Errors Report

Call History Report

The Call History page lets you view detailed records of calls and download CDRs (call detail records).

The fields at the top of the page let you select the starting and ending date and time for which you want to view call records.

When setting the date/time range for your search, keep in mind that retrieving a large number of records can take some time.

After you search for calls, the Call History page lists the calls in the time range you specified. If there are more than 500, the first page lists the first 500, and the arrow buttons below the list let you view other pages.

When you select a call associated with a conference, the Display Conference command (in the Actions list) switches from the Call History page to the Conference History page, displaying the associated conference.

The following table describes the fields in the list.
Table 11-1  Information in the Calls list

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>From</td>
<td>Source of the call.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To</td>
<td>Destination of the call.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Call ID</td>
<td>Unique identifier for the call.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Start Time</td>
<td>Time the call began (first signaling event).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>End Time</td>
<td>Time the call ended (session closed).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Host</td>
<td>Host name of the server that handled the call.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Export History

The Export History list provides a record of the CDR exports (call and conference data downloads) from the system. It appears when you click the Show Export History command (in the Actions list). The following table describes the fields in the list.

Table 11-2  Information in the Export History list

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>User</td>
<td>User ID of the person who performed the CDR export.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date of Export</td>
<td>Date and time of the export.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Export Time Frame</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Start Date</td>
<td>Identify the time period for which CDRs were included in the export.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Export Time Frame End Date</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Call Events

The Call Events list provides much more detail about the selected call, listing every state change, flow change, and signaling event in the course of the call. It appears when you click the Show Call Events command (in the Actions list). The following table describes the fields in the list.
Table 11-3  Information in the Call Events list

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Name of the event.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attributes</td>
<td>Information about the event (varies with the event type).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time</td>
<td>Date and time of the event.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sequence</td>
<td>Identifies when in the order of changes to this call this event occurred.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Property Changes

The Property Changes list provides more information about the selected call, listing every change in the value of a call property during the course of the call. It appears when you click the Show Property Changes command (in the Actions list). The following table describes the fields in the list.

Table 11-4  Information in the Property Changes list

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Name of the call property.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Value assigned to the property.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time</td>
<td>Date and time of the property change.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sequence</td>
<td>Identifies when in the order of changes to this call this property change occurred.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also:

“Conference History Report” on page 191
“Export CDR Data” on page 194

Conference History Report

The Conference History page lets you view detailed records of conferences and download CDRs (call detail records).

The fields at the top of the page let you select the starting and ending date and time for which you want to view conference records.

When setting the date/time range for your search, keep in mind that retrieving a large number of records can take some time.
After you search for conferences, the Conference History page lists all the conferences in the time range you specified. If there are more than 500, the first page lists the first 500, and the arrow buttons below the list let you view other pages. The following table describes the fields in the list.

### Table 11-5  Information in the Conferences list

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Conference ID</td>
<td>Unique identifier for the conference.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Start Time</td>
<td>Time the conference began (first conference event).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>End Time</td>
<td>Time the conference ended (last conference event).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Host</td>
<td>Host name of server that handled the conference.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Export History

The Export History list provides a record of the CDR exports (call and conference data downloads) from the system. It appears when you click the Show Export History command (in the Actions list). The following table describes the fields in the list.

### Table 11-6  Information in the Export History list

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>User</td>
<td>User ID of the person who performed the CDR export.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date of Export</td>
<td>Date and time of the export.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Export Time Frame</td>
<td>Identify the time period for which CDRs were included in the export.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Start Date</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Export Time Frame End Date</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Associated Calls

The Associated Calls list shows all the calls associated with the selected conference. The list displays the same data as described in “Call History Report” on page 189.

The Display Call command (in the Actions list) switches from the Conference History page to the Call History page, displaying the call that was selected in the Associated Calls list.
Conference Events

The Conference Events list provides much more detail about the selected conference, listing every state change and call event in the course of the conference. The following table describes the fields in the list.

Table 11-7  Information in the Conference Events list

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Name of the event.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attributes</td>
<td>Information about the event (varies with the event type).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Call UUID</td>
<td>Call identifier (if call event).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time</td>
<td>Date and time of the event.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sequence</td>
<td>Identifies when in the order of changes to this conference this event occurred.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When you select a conference event with a call UUID, the Display Call command (in the Actions list) displays the associated call.

Property Changes

The Property Changes list provides more information about the selected conference, listing every change in the value of a conference property during the course of the conference. The following table describes the fields in the list.

Table 11-8  Information in the Property Changes list

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Name of the call property.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Value assigned to the property.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time</td>
<td>Date and time of the property change.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sequence</td>
<td>Identifies when in the order of changes to this call this property change occurred.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also:

“Call History Report” on page 189
“Export CDR Data” on page 194
Export CDR Data

The Export CDR Data command lets you download a CSV (comma-separated values) file containing all the call detail records (CDRs) for the time period you specify.

To download CDRs

1. Go to Reports > Call History (or Conference History).
2. In the Actions list, click Export CDR Data.
3. In the Export Time Frame dialog box, set the Start Date and time and the End Date and time you want to include.
   The defaults provide all CDR data for the current day.
4. Click OK.
5. Choose a path and filename for the CDR file and click Save.
   The File Download dialog shows the progress.
6. When the download is complete, click Close.

You can open the CSV file with Microsoft Excel or another spreadsheet application. The file contains a line for each conference, which is followed by lines for each of the calls in the conference.

Conference Records

Conference records begin with the string CONF and have this layout:

CONF, node, id, logId, start, end, userId, roomId, callCount

Here is an example (in the file, it’s all one line):

CONF, asegal-vm1.prx.eng.westminster.polycom.com, d0a3c6cd-7c3f-4230-9b09-f6af6f6d26b, dma7000:3.0.0.59730:dma1000, 2011-01-06 09:32:16, 2011-01-06 10:17:17, LOCAL\admin, 1000, 4

Field values are enclosed in double quotes if:

- They begin or end with a space or tab ("value").
- They contain a comma ("Smith, John").
- They contain a double quote. In that case each double quote is also preceded by a double quote ("William ""Bill"" Smith").

The table below describes the fields in the record.
Call records begin with the string CALL and have this layout:

CALL, node, id, logId, start, end, source, destination, confId, join, leave, type

Here is an example (in the file, it’s all one line):


Values are enclosed in double quotes when necessary, using the same rules as for conference records.

The table below describes the fields in the record.

### Call Records

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CALL</td>
<td>Labels this as a call record.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>node</td>
<td>FQDN of the Polycom DMA server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>id</td>
<td>Unique identifier for the call.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>logId</td>
<td>Human-readable identifier useful for searching logs. Unique only until the next system restart.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>start</td>
<td>Time the call began (first signaling event).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end</td>
<td>Time the call ended (session closed).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Enterprise Directory Integration Report

If the Polycom DMA system is integrated with your enterprise directory, it reads the enterprise directory daily to refresh the information in its cache. It also rereads the directory whenever you update the directory integration settings (Configuration > System > Enterprise Directory).

For each cache update, the system generates an integration report on each node.

The Enterprise Directory Integration page reports the status for the last cache update, shows contact results for each domain in the forest, and lists any groups for which it was unable to retrieve membership information.

**Note**

You must be an enterprise user (with the appropriate user role assignments) to see the enterprise directory integration report. A local user can’t access this page, regardless of user roles.

The following table describes the information displayed at the top of the page and the fields in the two lists.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>source</td>
<td>Source of the call.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>destination</td>
<td>Destination of the call.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>confId</td>
<td>Unique identifier for the conference that the call joined.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>join</td>
<td>Time the call joined the conference.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leave</td>
<td>Time the call left the conference.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>type</td>
<td>Call protocol (h323 or sip).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also:

“Call History Report” on page 189

“Conference History Report” on page 191
Table 11-11  Fields on the Enterprise Directory Integration page

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Status</td>
<td><strong>OK</strong> indicates that the node successfully connected to the Active Directory during the last update. A padlock indicates that the connection was encrypted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User and group cache</td>
<td>Shows the state of the node’s cache of directory data and when it was last updated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Server name</td>
<td>The Active Directory server from which the Polycom DMA system retrieved the directory data it needs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connected to global catalog</td>
<td>Indicates whether the node connected to a global catalog server. If it did, but some attributes were not in the global catalog, that’s noted. Those attributes were retrieved from the domain controllers, and the results of that process are reported in the All Domains list below.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forest root DN</td>
<td>Shows the distinguished name of the Active Directory forest root domain.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Site                   | The Active Directory site name for the system. Available only if Auto-discover from FQDN (serverless bind) is selected on the Enterprise Directory page.  
If serverless bind is enabled, but no site is retrieved, the reason could be:  
• **Site could not be determined**: the system’s subnet isn’t mapped to a site (see http://support.microsoft.com//kb/889031).  
• **Auto-discover failed or is disabled**: could be problem with DNS domain name or missing SRV records on DNS server. |

**All Domains**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Domain Name</th>
<th>Name of the domain. All domains in the forest are listed, whether or not they’re used by the system.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Domain DN</td>
<td>Distinguished name of the domain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Domain Server</td>
<td>Fully qualified domain name of the server.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Status Indicates if the system contacted a domain controller in that domain (in order to retrieve attributes not in the global catalog or to get member information for its global groups) and the results:

- **Not required**: no groups from that domain have been imported into the Polycom DMA system and all attributes needed were in the global catalog.

- **Partially loaded or Unable to load**: see Error Message and the list of groups with incomplete information for more details.

Displays an error message if the domain server couldn’t be contacted. This can happen if the DNS server resolves the name to an IP address that isn’t valid or is temporarily unavailable. Return to the Enterprise Directory Integration page and try again.

If the system repeatedly fails to contact a domain, troubleshoot your network.

### Groups with Partially Loaded or No Membership Information

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Group Name</td>
<td>Name of a global group whose member information is incomplete. This includes groups that directly or indirectly contain groups whose member information is incomplete. Groups with members in multiple domains that couldn’t be contacted are listed for each.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Domain</td>
<td>Domain to which the group belongs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Description of the group.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also:

- “Enterprise Directory” on page 109
- “Enterprise Directory Integration Procedure” on page 114
- “Orphaned Groups and Users Report” on page 199
- “Conference Room Errors Report” on page 200
- “Enterprise Passcode Errors Report” on page 203
Orphaned Groups and Users Report

If the Polycom DMA system is integrated with your enterprise directory, it generates an orphaned groups and users report on each node whenever you manually update the directory connection (Configuration > System > Enterprise Directory) and when the system updates automatically to refresh its cache.

**Note**
You must be an enterprise user (with the appropriate user role assignments) to see the orphaned groups and users report. A local user can’t access this page, regardless of user roles.

The Orphaned Groups and Users page reports information about enterprise users and groups that are no longer in the enterprise directory or are no longer accessible to the Polycom DMA system, but for which the system has local data (typically, local conference rooms or customized enterprise conference rooms).

Orphaned data is no longer usable by the system, so you can generally delete it. But first make sure that the system is successfully integrated to the correct active directory domain. Switching domains can cause many users and groups to be orphaned.

The following table describes the fields in the two lists.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Orphaned Groups</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group ID</td>
<td>ID of the user group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Domain</td>
<td>Domain to which the user group belonged.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Orphaned Users</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User ID</td>
<td>ID of the user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First Name</td>
<td>The user’s first name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last Name</td>
<td>The user’s last name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Domain</td>
<td>Domain to which the user belonged.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roles</td>
<td>Polycom DMA system user roles assigned to the user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conference Rooms</td>
<td>Polycom DMA system custom conference rooms assigned to the user.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**To remove orphaned groups from the system**

1. Go to Reports > Orphaned Groups and Users.
2 In the Actions list, click Clean Orphaned Groups.

3 When prompted to confirm, click OK.

   The system removes the orphaned group data.

To remove orphaned users from the system
1 Go to Reports > Orphaned Groups and Users.
2 In the Actions list, click Clean Orphaned Users.
3 When prompted to confirm, click OK.

   The system removes the orphaned user data.

See also:
   “Enterprise Directory” on page 109
   “Enterprise Directory Integration Report” on page 196
   “Conference Room Errors Report” on page 200
   “Enterprise Passcode Errors Report” on page 203

Conference Room Errors Report

If the Polycom DMA system is integrated with your enterprise directory, it can create a conference room (virtual meeting room) for each enterprise user. See “Enterprise Directory” on page 109.

The Polycom DMA system reads the enterprise directory daily to refresh the information in its cache. It also rereads the directory whenever you update the directory integration settings (Configuration > System > Enterprise Directory).

If the directory integration settings are configured to generate conference room IDs for enterprise users, the Polycom DMA system retrieves the values from the designated directory attribute and removes the specified characters from them. If the resulting room ID is longer than the specified maximum, it strips the excess characters from the beginning of the string.

The Conference Room Errors page reports the conference room ID generation status and lists the problem IDs.

Note
You must be an enterprise user (with the appropriate user role assignments) to see the conference room errors report. A local user can’t access this page, regardless of user roles.
The summary at the top of the report shows when it was generated (check this to verify that the report you’re viewing reflects the most recent update of the cache) and the following information:

- Number of users in the directory
- Number of users with valid conference room IDs

  If you don’t specify a directory attribute from which to generate conference room IDs, this number is zero and the report contains nothing else of value.

- Number of users for whom the enterprise directory field being used to generate conference room IDs is empty (these are counted, but not listed individually below; find them in the enterprise directory)

- Number of blank conference room IDs (doesn’t include those for whom the enterprise directory field was empty, only those for whom its contents were filtered out)

- Number of invalid conference room IDs
- Number of duplicate conference room IDs

The blank, invalid, and duplicate conference room IDs are listed below.

**Note**

Duplicate conference room IDs are not disabled; they can be used for conferencing. But if both users associated with that conference room ID try to hold a conference at the same time, they end up in the same conference.

The following table describes the fields in the list.

**Table 11-13 Information in the Conference Room Errors list**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Problem</td>
<td>Description of the issue with this room ID (Blank, Duplicate, or Invalid).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conference Room ID</td>
<td>The conference room ID, typically generated from the enterprise user’s phone number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;directory attribute&gt;</td>
<td>The attribute (field) from the enterprise directory that’s used to generate the room ID (see “Enterprise Directory” on page 109). The column heading is the name of the attribute, such as telephoneNumber.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User ID</td>
<td>The login name or ID of the enterprise user with this room ID.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Domain</td>
<td>The domain to which the enterprise user belongs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Export Conference Room Errors Report

The Export Room Errors Report command lets you download a CSV (comma-separated values) file containing all the data in the conference room errors report.

To download conference room errors data

1. Go to Reports > Conference Room Errors.
2. In the Actions list, click Export Room Errors Report.
3. In the Exporting Conference Room Errors Report dialog box, click Download.
4. Choose a path and filename for the file and click Save.
   The File Download dialog shows the progress.
5. When the download is complete, click Close.

You can open the CSV file with Microsoft Excel or another spreadsheet application. The file contains the same data you see displayed on the Conference Room Errors page.

See also:

“Conference Room Errors Report” on page 200
Enterprise Passcode Errors Report

If the Polycom DMA system is integrated with your enterprise directory, conference and chairperson passcodes for enterprise users can be maintained in the enterprise directory. See “Adding Passcodes for Enterprise Users” on page 119.

The Polycom DMA system reads the enterprise directory daily to refresh the information in its cache. It also rereads the directory whenever you update the directory integration settings (Configuration > System > Enterprise Directory).

If the directory integration settings are configured to generate passcodes for enterprise users, the Polycom DMA system retrieves the values from the designated directory attributes and removes any non-numeric characters from them. If the resulting numeric passcode is longer than the specified maximum for that passcode type, it strips the excess characters from the beginning of the string.

The Enterprise Passcode Errors page reports the passcode generation status and lists the users with passcode errors.

Note
You must be an enterprise user (with the appropriate user role assignments) to see the enterprise passcode errors report. A local user can’t access this page, regardless of user roles.

The summary at the top of the report shows when it was generated (check this to verify that the report you’re viewing reflects the most recent update of the cache), the directory server accessed, and the following information:

- Number of users in the directory
- Number of users with duplicate chairperson and conference passcodes

Note
For users with duplicate passcodes, the system ignores the conference passcode, but honors the chairperson passcode.

- Number of users with valid, invalid, and unassigned chairperson passcodes and the directory attribute on which they’re based, along with the number of users with locally overridden chairperson passcodes
- Number of users with valid, invalid, and unassigned conference passcodes and the directory attribute on which they’re based, along with the number of users with locally overridden conference passcodes

If this is a two-server cluster, the above information is shown for each node.

The users with invalid passcodes are listed below. If this is a two-server cluster, there is a tab for each node.
The following table describes the fields in the list.

**Table 11-14  Information in the Enterprise Passcode Errors list**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Problem</td>
<td>Indicates what the problem is: Chairperson, Conference, or Duplicate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User ID</td>
<td>The login name or ID of the enterprise user with this passcode error.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Domain</td>
<td>The domain to which the enterprise user belongs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last Name</td>
<td>The enterprise user’s last name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First Name</td>
<td>The enterprise user’s first name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>For an invalid passcode, shows the generated value (after the system stripped non-numeric characters out of the attribute value and truncated it if necessary).&lt;br&gt;For duplicate chairperson and conference passcodes, shows the raw attribute value of each and the duplicate value generated (after stripping non-numeric characters and truncating if necessary).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also:

- “Export Enterprise Passcode Errors Report” on page 204
- “Adding Passcodes for Enterprise Users” on page 119
- “Enterprise Directory” on page 109
- “Enterprise Directory Integration Report” on page 196
- “Orphaned Groups and Users Report” on page 199
- “Conference Room Errors Report” on page 200

**Export Enterprise Passcode Errors Report**

The Export Enterprise Passcode Errors Report command lets you download a CSV (comma-separated values) file containing all the data in the enterprise passcode errors report.

**To download enterprise passcode errors data**

1. Go to Reports > Enterprise Passcode Errors.
2. In the Actions list, click Export Enterprise Passcode Errors Report.
3. In the Exporting Enterprise Passcode Errors Report dialog box, click Download.
4 Choose a path and filename for the file and click **Save**.

The **File Download** dialog shows the progress.

5 When the download is complete, click **Close**.

You can open the CSV file with Microsoft Excel or another spreadsheet application. The file contains the same data you see displayed on the **Enterprise Passcode Errors** page.

See also:

“**Enterprise Passcode Errors Report**” on page 203
Index

A
access, system interface 3
account lockout configuration 39
activation keys 46
Active Directory 15, 109
integration 114
integration report 196
add conference templates dialog 80
add MCU dialog 62
add MCU pool dialog 68
add MCU pool order dialog 71
adding
conference passcodes 119
DNS record 12
MCU 64
second server 184, 185, 186
users 143
ASCII 6
audit data 189, 191

B
backing up 176
banner, login 40
best practices 161
busy out MCU 64

C
calendaring 101
call history 189
cascading 78
CDR data, export 194
CDR export history 190, 192
CDRs 189, 191
certificate
details dialog 25
information dialog 24
install CA 27
install dialog 25
install signed 29
management list 22
overview 19
procedures 26
remove 31
signing request 28
signing request dialog 24
change password dialog 171
clustering 1, 2
CMA integration 51, 52, 57
commands, system monitoring 172
conference
cascading 78
IVR service 78
conference appointments 101
conference history 191
conference passcodes
adding 119
enterprise users 119
conference passwords
editing 148
enterprise errors report 203
export errors data 204
local user 146
conference room
errors report 200
export errors data 202
procedures 154
conference settings 100
conference setup 75
conference templates
about 75
add dialog 80
assigning to enterprise groups 159
edit dialog 90
procedures 98
setting up 16
video frame layout 98
configuration
backup 176
calendar 101
local user account 39
logging 49
login sessions 36
password requirements 37
security 32
signaling 13, 47
single-server 2
site topology 127
system 41
tasks 11
two-server cluster 2
configuration, system 53
connect to enterprise directory 15

D
dashboard 166
date and time settings 45
defaults, conference 100
description, system 1
details, certificate 25
device management 59
dial string prefix 47
dialing prefix 100
directory, enterprise 15, 109
DNS record 12
download
  CDRs 194
enterprise password errors data 204
room errors data 202
duration, conference 100

eedit conference templates dialog 90
edit MCU dialog 63
edit MCU pool dialog 68
edit MCU pool order dialog 72
e-mail meeting appointments 101
enterprise directory 15
  integration 109, 114
  integration report 196
  settings 109
enterprise groups 156, 159
enterprise password
  errors report 203
  export errors data 204
errors
  conference room 200
  enterprise password 203
Exchange server integration 101
expansion, system 184, 185, 186
export
  CDR data 194
  enterprise password errors data 204
invalid conference rooms data 202
export history 190, 192

F
failed server, replacing 187
fault tolerance 1, 2
field input requirements 6

G
gatekeeper 13, 47
groups, enterprise 156, 159
groups, orphaned 199

H
H.323 prefix 47
halting system 188
hardware
  replacing 187
  upgrading 184, 185, 186
history
  call 189
  CDR export 190, 192
  conference 191
  retention 50

I
inactivity lockout 39
information, certificate 24
initial setup 11
  add DNS record 12
  conference templates 16
  configure signaling 13
  enterprise directory 15
  license the system 12
  MCUs 14
  security 13
  testing 16
input fields 6
install certificates dialog 25
integration
  CMA 51, 52, 57
  enterprise directory 109, 114
integration report, enterprise directory 196
interface access 3
introduction to system 1
invalid conference rooms 200
invalid enterprise passwords 203
iostat command 173
IVR service 78

J
join CMA 52, 57

L
layout, video frame 98
LDAP 15, 109, 114
leave CMA 57
license the system 12
licenses
  open source software 6
logging configuration 49
login banner 40
login failure, settings 39
login sessions 170
login sessions, settings 36
logs, system 174

M
maintenance
  overview 161
  recommended 163
management
  certificate 22
  device 59
  overview 161
  system 161
  users and groups 141
MCU
  add dialog 62
  edit dialog 63
  list 59
  management 59
  procedures 64
  setting up 14
MCU pool orders
  add 71
  edit 72
  list 70
  procedures 73
MCU pools
  add 68
  edit 68
  list 67
  procedures 69
MCU zone orders
  See MCU pool orders

MCU zones
  See MCU pools
media servers 59
meeting appointments 101
monitoring the system 166

N
network routing rules 44
network settings 41
node
  adding 184, 185, 186
  replacing 187
NTP servers 45

O
open source software 6
operations
  system 161
  users and groups 141
orphaned groups and users 199
Outlook add-in 101
overview
  management and maintenance 161
  system 1

P
packages, open source software 6
passcodes, conference
  enterprise users 119
password requirements, local 37
password, local user
  change dialog 171
passwords, conference
  editing 148
  enterprise errors report 203
  export errors data 204
  local user 146
permissions, user 142
ping command 172
pool orders, MCU
  add 71
  edit 72
  list 70
  procedures 73
pools, MCU
  add 68
  edit 68
  list 67
  procedures 69
prefix, dialing 100
procedures
site topology 138
system configuration 53
professional services 3
profiles, RMX 75

R
record retention, history 50
records
call 189
CDR exports 190, 192
conference 191
redundancy 1, 2
regular maintenance tasks 163
replacing failed server 187
reports 189
call history 189, 190, 192
conference history 191
conference room errors 200
enterprise directory integration 196
enterprise password errors 203
orphaned groups and users 199
restarting system 188
restoring from backup 176
RMX
devices 59
profiles 75
roles, user
and system access 3
assigning to enterprise groups 159
overview 142
room errors data, export 202
routing configuration 44

S
sar command 173
security
certificate procedures 26
configuration settings 32
overview 19
system 19
security, setting up 13
select layout dialog 98
server
adding 184, 185, 186
replacing 187
settings 41
session configuration 36
sessions, login 170
set up
conference templates 16
MCUs 14
security 13
settings
conference 100
enterprise directory 109, 114
history retention 50
logging 49
network 41
server 41
signaling 47
time 45
settings dialog 6
setup
conference 75
initial 11
testing 16
shared number dialing 104, 106, 107, 108
shutting down 188
signaling configuration 47
signaling, configuring 13
signed certificate
install 29
remove 31
signing request, certificate 24
single-server configuration 2
site topology 78, 127
from CMA 51, 52, 57
procedures 138
software
licenses 46
open source packages 6
upgrade procedures 182
upgrading 181
solution support 3
status, system 166, 172
support 3
system
configuration procedures 53
configuration topics 41
dashboard 166
initial configuration summary 11
introduction 1
license 12
logs 174
maintaining 163
operations 161
overview 1
reports 189
security 19
testing 16
time 45
views 3
working in 3

T
templates	edit dialog 90
video frame layout 98
templates, conference
about 75
add dialog 80
assigning to enterprise groups 159
procedures 98
setting up 16
testing initial setup 16
text size 6
time settings 45
tools, system management 172
top command 173
topology, site 127, 138
traceroute command 172
Trusted Root CA
install 27
remove 31	
two-server configuration 2

U
Unicode 6
upgrading
hardware 184, 185, 186
procedures 182
software 181

user experience settings 100
user groups 156, 159
user roles
and system access 3
assigning to enterprise groups 159
overview 142
user sessions, monitoring 170
users
adding 143
password requirements, local 37
procedures 152
users and groups 141
users page 144
users, orphaned 199

V
version upgrade 181
video frame layout 98
virtual entry queue 104, 106, 107, 108

W
working in system 3

X
X.509 certificates 19

Z
zone orders, MCU
See pool orders, MCU
zones, MCU
See pools, MCU